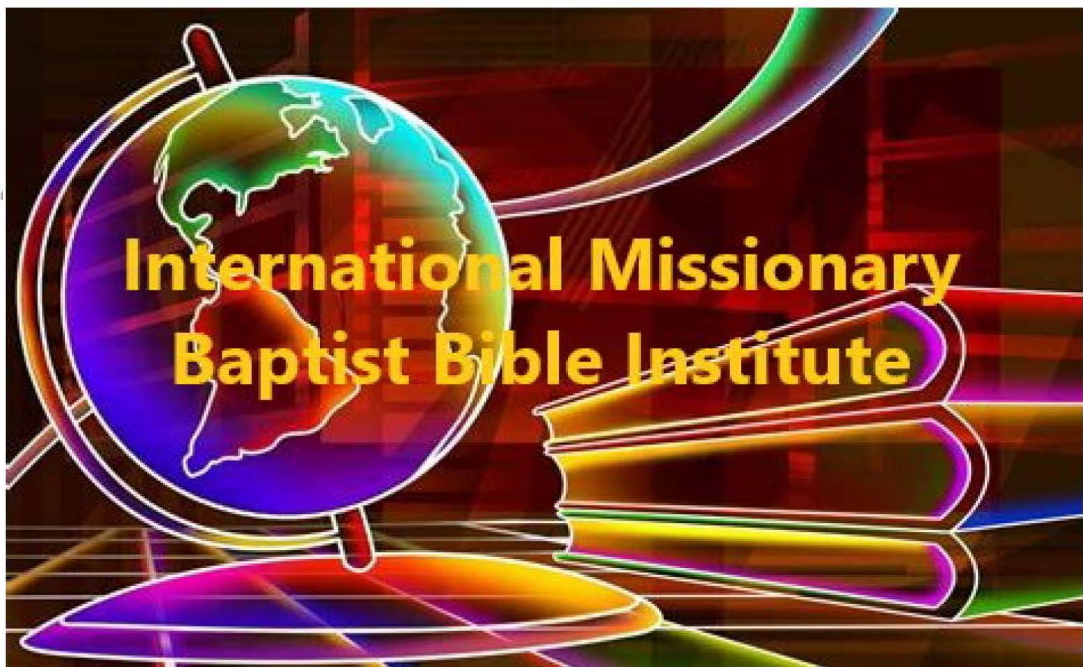


Basic Christian Doctrine



Basic Christian Doctrine

Written by John Teague

Edited by Joseph F. Roberts

Published by International Missionary Baptist Ministries Publications

271 Mayfield Drive

Smyrna, TN 37167

www.imbmpodcasts.com

© 2020 International Missionary Baptist Ministries Publications

All rights reserved. Permission is granted to copy for use in Jail or Prison Ministries or for group Bible Study or for personal Bible Study. For any other use permissions contact:

director@imbmpodcasts.com

Basic Christian Doctrine

by

John W TeagueDr.

Edited by

Joseph F. RobertsDr.

Basic Christian Doctrine

Table of Contents

Table of Contents.....	3
Course Objectives.....	11

PART ONE

The Nature of and Need For Christian Doctrine

I. The nature of Christian doctrine	13
A. Definition.....	13
B. Purpose.....	13
II. The need for Christian doctrine.....	13
A. The nature of man necessitates doctrine.....	13
B. Doctrine is emphasized in the New Testament.....	14
C. A knowledge of the truth is essential to the Christian Life.....	15
D. A knowledge of truth is necessary to propagate the gospel.....	16
E. A knowledge of truth is necessary to a defense of the gospel	17

PART TWO

Bibliology---The Doctrine of the Bible

I. Canonicity of the Scriptures.	
A. Some basic definitions	18
B. The law of canonicity for the Old Testament	19
C. The law of canonicity for the New Testament	21
II. The concept of inspiration	23
A. There is a distinction between inspiration and revelation	23
B. There is a distinction between the mode and The result of inspiration	26
C. There is a distinction between inspiration and authority	29

- III. The proofs of inspiration or evidences supporting the claims of inspiration 30
- A. Inferential proofs associated with the doctrine of inspiration 30
 - B. The character and claims of the Bible attest to it's inspiration 30
 - C. The indestructibility of the Bible attests to it's inspiration .34
 - D. The Bible is a supernatural book 38

PART THREE

Theology---The Doctrine of God

- I. The Godhead 39
 - A. The effect of man's ignorance of God 40
 - B. Who is the God of the Bible 40
 - C. The existence or Being of God 41
 - D. The nature of God as revealed in His names 42
 - E. The nature of God as revealed by His attributes 60
- II. The Trinity of God 62
 - A. Three Beings are recognized as God 63
 - B. The three Beings are so described that they must be recognized as distinct persons 64
 - C. The three Persons have always existed eternally 65
- III. God the Father 65
 - A. The personality of God the Father 66
 - B. The attributes (essential characteristics) of God the Father 68
- IV. God the Son 88
 - A. The title "son of God" is used in several ways 88
 - B. The title "Son of God" is applied to Jesus Christ as the peculiar Son of God. 89
 - C. The Person of Jesus Christ 90
 - D. The subordination of the Son to the Father 98
 - E. The entrance of the Son into humanity and His humanity 99
 - F. The character of Jesus 104
 - G. The death of Jesus (the importance of it) 106

H.	The resurrection of Jesus	114
I.	The exaltation of Jesus	116
V.	God the Holy Spirit	117
A.	The names of the Holy Spirit	117
B.	The personality of the Holy Spirit	121
C.	The deity of the Holy Spirit	125
D.	The work of the Holy Spirit	129
VI.	The determinate counsel of God	148
A.	The fact of His counsel	148
B.	The distinguishing characteristics of divine counsel	149
C.	The extent of God's determinate counsel	152
VII.	The works of God	155
A.	The work of God in creation	155
B.	The work of God in preservation	207
C.	The work of God in miracles	208
D.	The work of God in providence	211

PART FOUR

Anthropology---The Doctrine of Man

I.	Man as a personal being	218
A.	The origin of man	218
B.	The unity of the human race	218
C.	Man is a personal being	220
D.	Man is a moral being	221
E.	Man was placed in a position of responsibility	221
F.	The fall of man	222
II.	The entrance of sin	226
A.	What is sin	226
B.	The beginning of sin	227
C.	The universality of sin	228
III.	The destiny of man	234

- A. All men are destined to die 234
- B. All men are destined to judgment 240

PART FIVE

Deontology---The Doctrine of Moral Obligation

- I. The nature of God's law 245
 - A. The circumstances surrounding the giving of the law on . 245
 - B. The law was given for the government of the people who were to be a peculiar treasure unto God 247
- II. The ten commandments proper 248
 - A. The first commandment 249
 - B. The second commandment 252
 - C. The third commandment 254
 - D. The fourth commandment 256
 - E. The fifth commandment 261
 - F. The sixth commandment 263
 - G. The seventh commandment 264
 - H. The eighth commandment 266
 - I. The ninth commandment 268
 - J. The tenth commandment 269

PART SIX

Soteriology---The Doctrine of Salvation

- I. The grace of God as the source of salvation 271
 - A. The word "grace" is used in several senses 271
 - B. Grace goes hand in hand with righteousness 271
- II. The covenant relationship between God, Jesus Christ and the people of God 272
 - A. The covenant between the Father and the Son is called the covenant of redemption 273

B. The covenant of grace is enacted at the moment a person received Jesus Christ as his Savior 275

III. The Biblical plan of salvation 276

- A. Recognize the fact you are a sinner 276
- B. Realize that you can not save yourself 278
- C. Understand the truth that God loves you 278
- D. Accept the fact that Jesus came from heaven to become the Savior of all who would believe 279
- E. Accept the fact that Jesus died on the cross for you personally 281
- F. Believe that Jesus was actually buried 282
- G. Acknowledge through faith that God raised Jesus from the dead 283
- H. Make repentance unto God for being a sinner, confess Jesus as your personal Savior and believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead 285
- I. Accept the promise of God to save you once you have repented, confessed and believed 286
- J. Once you have received Jesus Christ as personal Savior, follow the Lord in scriptural baptism 287

IV. The place of the plan of salvation in the Scriptures 289

- A. Some representative Old Testament passages which set forth Christ as Redeemer 289
- B. Some clear New Testament teachings regarding salvation 291

V. Jesus Christ as Mediator between God and man 295

- A. Consider the authority of Jesus 295
- B. Consider the qualifications of Jesus 295
- C. Consider the prerogative of Jesus 300

VI. The application of Christ's redemption 314

- A. The application of Christ's redemption is by faith 314
- B. The application of Christ's redemption is through repentance 317
- C. The application of Christ's redemption is through regeneration 324
- D. The application of Christ's redemption is through justification 330
- E. The application of Christ's redemption is on the

- basis of adoption 335
- F. The application of Christ's redemption is by
sanctification 337
- G. The application of Christ's redemption is of prayer 341
- H. The application of Christ's redemption gives
assurance of salvation 349

PART SEVEN

Ecclesiology---The Doctrine of the Church

- I. The New Testament usage's of the term church. 359
 - A. The term is used in the sense of a local assembly of
believers 359
 - B. The term is used in a generic sense as relating to all
of a class or kind 359
 - C. The term is used in a secular sense as in an assembly
of a town meeting 360
 - D. The term is used in the sense of being a body of
Christ 360
- II. The origin of the church 362
 - A. The preparation of the original material for the
church 362
 - B. The place of the establishment of the church 363
- III. The nature of the church 372
 - A. The church is presently God's kingdom on earth 372
 - B. The church is not universal and invisible composed
of all the saved 376
- IV. The constitution and organization of the church 383
 - A. The officer of the church 384
 - B. The ordinances of the church 388
 - C. The worship of the church 395
 - D. The mission of the church 397
 - E. The walk of the church 398
 - F. The destiny of the church 399

PART EIGHT

Eschatology---The Doctrine of Last Things

- I. The dispensations 402
 - A. The dispensation of innocence 402
 - B. The dispensation of conscience 403
 - C. The dispensation of human government 404
 - D. The dispensation of promise 405
 - E. The dispensation of law 407
 - F. The dispensation of grace 407
 - G. The dispensation of the Kingdom 408
- II. The second coming of Christ 408
 - A. Things not constituting the second coming 408
 - B. The facts of the second coming 410
 - C. The purpose for the second coming 418
 - D. The manner of the second coming 422
 - E. The signs of the second coming 428
 - F. The time of the second coming 431
 - G. The conditions of the world at the second coming 431
 - H. The premillennial view of the second coming 434
- III. The grand consummation 466
 - A. There will be a new heaven and earth 467
 - B. There will be a new Jerusalem 467
 - C. There will be a new people 467
 - D. There will be a new temple 467
 - E. There will be a new paradise 467
- IV. Addendum..... 469

Basic Christian Doctrine

Course Objective:

Upon completion of this course in you should be able:

To show an increased desire for Biblical knowledge.

Demonstrate an appreciation for and a positive support of every tenant of the historic Biblical faith and practice.

Use the Word of God effectively in personal witnessing.

Apply the Christian faith to your own life as a practical, everyday rule of conduct and practice.

Describe the nature and need for Christian doctrine.

State without reservation that the Bible is the inspired Word of God.

Set forth a number of proofs of divine inspiration of the Bible.

Differentiate between revelation and inspiration.

Discuss scripturally the doctrine of the Godhead---naming the different Persons in the Trinity and stating the work of each Person as set forth in the Scriptures.

State the nature of God's love.

Give the import of each of the Ten Commandments and the ways in which they may be broken.

Discuss the nature, manifestations and results of God's grace as it is extended to man.

Present the plan of salvation.

Present Jesus Christ as Mediator between God and men as well as the benefits of His mediatorial office.

State clearly and consisely the New Testament usage's of the term church.

Give the time and location of the origin of the church.

Discuss in depth the nature of the church.

Set out the organization of the church, giving the scriptural officers and their functions, the ordinances and the commission of the church.

Differentiate and characterize the dispensations as set forth in the sacred Scriptures.

State a full persuasion that Jesus is coming again.

Defend the position that the second coming of Jesus will be personal and visible.

State a personal faith in the resurrection and glorification of all believers.

Basic Christian Doctrine

PART ONE

The Nature of and Need For Christian Doctrine

Introduction: Certain questions naturally arise in approaching any study.

1. What is the nature of the study?
2. What is the need for the study?

I. The nature of Christian doctrine.

A. Definition: Christian doctrine is the setting out in more or less complete and systematic form of the ideas necessary to an understanding of the Christian religion.

B. Purpose::

1. Negatively, Christian doctrine is not designed to prove Christianity true.
2. Positively, Christian doctrine is designed to set forth what the Bible teaches in a systematic and intelligible form.

II. The need for Christian doctrine.

A. The nature of man necessitates doctrine (teaching).

1. Man is intelligent and will think.

Isaiah 1:18

Isa Come now, and let us reason together, saith the LORD: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool.1:18

2. When man thinks about religion, he thinks about

doctrine.

Philippians 4:8

Phil 4:8 Finally, brethren, whatsoever things are true, whatsoever things are honest, whatsoever things are just, whatsoever things are pure, whatsoever things are lovely, whatsoever things are of good report; if there be any virtue, and if there be any praise, think on these things.

B. Doctrine (teaching) is emphasized in the New Testament.

1. Jesus is called a teacher about 45 times in the New Testament.

John 3:2

John 3:2 The same came to Jesus by night, and said unto him, Rabbi, we know that thou art a teacher come from God: for no man can do these miracles that thou doest, except God be with him.

2. Jesus is said to have taught about 45 times in the New Testament.

Mark 10:1

Mark 10:1 And he arose from thence, and cometh into the coasts of Judaea by the farther side of : and the people resort unto him again; and, as he was wont, he taught them again.

3. Paul, the other apostles, and New Testament leaders were teachers.

2 Timothy 1:11

2 Tim Whereunto I am appointed a preacher, and an apostle, and a teacher of the Gentiles.1:11

4. Christianity is based upon pure facts which are to be taught.

Matthew 28:18-20

Mat 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying,
All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

Mat 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the
Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

Mat 28:20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you:
and, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

C. A knowledge of the truth is essential in the Christian life.

1. The Christian life is a life of faith.

a. The Christian life is entered through faith.

Ephesians 2:4-8

Eph 2:4 But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us,

Eph 2:5 Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ,
(by grace ye are saved;)

Eph 2:6 And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places
in Christ Jesus:

Eph 2:7 That in the ages to come he might show the exceeding riches of his grace in
his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus.

Eph 2:8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the
gift of God:

b. The Christian life is matured through faith.

James 1:2-4

James 1:2 My brethren, count it all joy when ye fall into divers temptations;

James 1:3 Knowing this, that the trying of your faith worketh patience.

James 1:4 But let patience have her perfect work, that ye may be perfect and entire, wanting nothing.

c. The gospel offer is accepted through faith.

Romans 3:22

Rom Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference:3:22

Romans 5:1-2

Rom 5:1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ:

Rom 5:2 By whom also we have access by faith into this grace wherein we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God.

2. The Christian life ends in a burst of faith.

Psalms 23:4

Psa 23:4 Yea, though I walk through the valley of the shadow of death, I will fear no evil: for thou art with me; thy rod and thy staff they comfort me.

D. A knowledge of truth is necessary to propagate the gospel.

2 Timothy 2:15

2 Tim Study to show thyself approved unto God, a workman that needeth not to be ashamed, rightly dividing the word of truth.2:15

John 5:39

John Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.5:39

1 Peter 3:15

1 Pet But sanctify the Lord God in your hearts: and be ready always to give an answer to every man that asketh you a reason of the hope that is in you with meekness and fear:3:15

E. A knowledge of the truth is necessary to a defense of the gospel.

Jude 3

Jude 1:3 Beloved, when I gave all diligence to write unto you of the common salvation, it was needful for me to write unto you, and exhort you that ye should earnestly contend for the faith which was once delivered unto the saints.

Basic Christian Doctrine

PART TWO

Bibliology---The Doctrine of the Bible

I. Canonicity of the Scriptures.

A. Some basic definitions.

1. Canon---Origin-Greek “Kanon” meaning a reed or measuring rod.

a. It’s meaning as applied to Divine revelation---a rule of life or doctrine.

Galatians 6:16

Gal And as many as walk according to this rule, peace be on them, and mercy, and upon the Israel of God.6:16

2 Corinthians 10:15

2 Cor 10:15 Not boasting of things without our measure, that is, of other men's labours; but having hope, when your faith is increased, that we shall be enlarged by you according to our rule abundantly,

Philippians 3:16

Phil Nevertheless, whereto we have already attained, let us walk by the same rule, let us mind the same thing.3:16

b. The Scripture canon is composed of the 66 books of the Bible.

2. Canonicity---the right of any book to a place in the Bible, the holy canon.

a. The process or state of a certain book being in the canon of Scripture.

b. It is important to note that canonicity deals with a certain book of the Bible while the Canon deals with the entire Bible.

B. The law of canonicity for the Old Testament.

1. Requirements for canonicity in the Old Testament.

Before a book could find a place in the Old Testament Canon it must have been:

- a. Written by a prophet.
 - b. Endorsed by a prophet.
 - c. Edited by a prophet.
2. It is a fairly well established tradition that the prophet Ezra formed the Canon of the Old Testament.
 3. The Great Prophet (Jesus Christ) put His endorsement on the Old Testament Scriptures , and once and for all established the right of each book to it's place in the Old Testament.

Deuteronomy 18:15

Deu 18:15 The LORD thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken;

Luke 24:27

Luke 24:27 And beginning at Moses and all the prophets, he expounded unto them in all the scriptures the things concerning himself.

John 5:39

John Search the scriptures; for in them ye think ye have eternal life: and they are they which testify of me.5:39

Note: The scriptures referred to here are the Old Testament Scriptures for the New Testament had not yet been canonized nor put into a Canon.

4. The Lord Jesus Christ divided the Old Testament into three divisions.

Luke 24:44-45

Luke 24:44 And he said unto them, These are the words which I spake unto you, while I was yet with you, that all things must be fulfilled, which were written in the law of Moses, and in the prophets, and in the psalms, concerning me.

Luke 24:45 Then opened he their understanding, that they might understand the scriptures,

- a. The law.
- b. The prophets.
- c. The Psalms.

5. An observation of interest.

a. In the New Testament there are said to be 263 direct quotations and approximately 350 allusions to the Old Testament.

b. There are references to all but 7 of the Old Testament books in the New Testament. Those 7 are:

- 1) Obadiah.
- 2) Nahum.
- 3) Ecclesiastes.
- 4) Song of Solomon.
- 5) Esther.
- 6) Ezra.

7) Nehemiah.

c. The absence of quotation in the New Testament of an Old Testament book argues nothing against its canonicity.

6. The “Apocrypha” (meaning hidden or covered) consists of 14 books not found in the Hebrew Old Testament; but it is in the Septuagint (a pre-Christian Greek version of the Old Testament; still in use in the Eastern Church) and in the Vulgate (a Latin version of the Scriptures; primarily the work of Jerome in the 4th century A. D.).

a. Roman Catholics accept the Apocrypha.

b. Lutherans and Episcopalians appoint it to be read for “example of life and instruction in manner” but not for the establishing of doctrine.

C. The law of canonicity for the New Testament.

1. The requirements for being accepted into the Canon of the New Testament.

a. A book must have been accepted as divine authority during the apostolic age in order to have the right to be in the New Testament.

b. A book must have been written or endorsed by an apostle or his associate.

2. Points of clarification.

a. Contrary to the supposition of many, the New Testament Canon was not formed by decree of church council arbitrarily at the council of .

b. The council of ratified the Canon but only as it had already been accepted by the churches.

c. The Canon of the New Testament was gradually formed under the providence of God the Holy Spirit undoubtedly guiding the churches in

discerning the true and the spurious (something added).

3. There are 7 books in the New Testament that were temporarily questioned. The term given these books is antilegomena (spoken against or disputed). Those books are:

- a. Hebrews.
- b. James.
- c. 2 Peter.
- d. 2 John.
- e. 3 John.
- f. Jude.
- g. Revelation.

4. General characteristics of the New Testament books.

- a. They were read in the churches.

1 Thessalonians 5:27

1 Th I charge you by the Lord that this epistle be read unto all the holy brethren. 5:27

- b. They were circulated among the churches.

Colossians 4:16

Col 4:16 And when this epistle is read among you, cause that it be read also in the church of the Laodiceans; and that ye likewise read the epistle from Laodicea.

2 Peter 3:15-16

2 Pet And account that the longsuffering of our Lord is salvation; even as our beloved brother Paul also according to the wisdom given unto him hath written unto you; 3:15

2 Pet 3:16 As also in all his epistles, speaking in them of these things; in which are some things hard to be understood, which they that are unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also the other scriptures, unto their own destruction.

- c. The churches were warned against forged writings.

2 Thessalonians 2:2

2 Th 2:2 That ye be not soon shaken in mind, or be troubled, neither by spirit, nor by word, nor by letter as from us, as that the day of Christ is at hand.

II. The concept of inspiration.

A. There is a distinction between inspiration and revelation.

- 1. Revelation is the communication of truth that can not be discovered otherwise.

1 Corinthians 2:9-10

1 Cor 2:9 But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him.

1 Cor But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.2:10

Note: Although 1 Corinthians 2:9-10 is use by many when speaking of heaven, the truth of the matter is these two verses do not speak of heaven at all. They speak of:

- 1) The saving work of God.
- 2) The gospel message.
- 2. Inspiration is the recording of divine truth under the prompting of the Holy Spirit.

Job 32:8

Job 32:8 But there is a spirit in man: and the inspiration of the Almighty giveth them understanding.

2 Timothy 3:16-17

2 Tim All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction in righteousness:3:16

2 Tim That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works.3:17

2 Peter 1:19-21

2 Pet 1:19 We have also a more sure word of prophecy; whereunto ye do well that ye take heed, as unto a light that shineth in a dark place, until the day dawn, and the day star arise in your hearts:

2 Pet Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private interpretation.1:20

2 Pet For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.1:21

a. There can be revelation without inspiration as when John heard the voice of the seven thunders but was not permitted to write what they said.

Revelation 10:3-4

Rev 10:3 And cried with a loud voice, as when a lion roareth: and when he had cried, seven thunders uttered their voices.

Rev 10:4 And when the seven thunders had uttered their voices, I was about to write: and I heard a voice from heaven saying unto me, Seal up those things which the seven thunders uttered, and write them not.

b. There can be inspiration without revelation as

when the writers wrote what they had seen with their own eyes or discovered by research.

1 John 1:1-4

1 John 1:1 That which was from the beginning, which we have heard, which we have seen with our eyes, which we have looked upon, and our hands have handled, of the Word of life;

1 John 1:2 (For the life was manifested, and we have seen it, and bear witness, and show unto you that eternal life, which was with the Father, and was manifested unto us;)

1 John 1:3 That which we have seen and heard declare we unto you, that ye also may have fellowship with us: and truly our fellowship is with the Father, and with his Son Jesus Christ.

1 John 1:4 And these things write we unto you, that your joy may be full.

Luke 1:1-4

Luke 1:1 Forasmuch as many have taken in hand to set forth in order a declaration of those things which are most surely believed among us,

Luke 1:2 Even as they delivered them unto us, which from the beginning were eyewitnesses, and ministers of the word;

Luke 1:3 It seemed good to me also, having had perfect understanding of all things from the very first, to write unto thee in order, most excellent Theophilus,

Luke 1:4 That thou mightest know the certainty of those things, wherein thou hast been instructed.

B. There is distinction is between the mode and the result of inspiration.

1. The mode of inspiration is the how of inspiration.

What method did God employ in the process of inspiration?

a. Erroneous theories associated with the doctrine of inspiration.

1) The intuition theory.

This theory states that inspiration is simply a superior insight into moral and religious truths by natural man. The intuition theory is held by the Unitarians.

2) The illumination theory.

a) This theory states that inspiration is merely an intensifying and elevating of the religious perceptions of the believer.

b) According to the illumination theory there is only a small amount of Divine influence in inspiration.

c) Illumination deals with understanding truth, not with the recording of it.

(1) David prayed for illumination.

Psalm 119:18

Psa 119:18 Open thou mine eyes, that I may behold wondrous things out of thy law.

(2) Paul discussed illumination.

1 Corinthians 2:12

1 Cor Now we have received, not the spirit of

the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God.2:12

3) The dynamic theory.

a) This theory states that inspiration is the enabling of the writers to transmit the general truth which they were commissioned to transmit.

b) The dynamic theory makes the writers of the scripture to be Infallible in matters of faith and practice but not in matters which were not of an immediate religious character.

c) Marcus Dodd in his The Bible: Its Origin and Nature maintains:

“it does not explain, or even attempt to explain, how writers should be possessed of supernatural knowledge while inditing one sentence and be dropped to a much lower level in the next. It does not give us the psychology of that state of mind which can infallibly pronounce on matters of doctrine, while it is all astray on the simpler facts of history. It makes no attempt to analyze the relation subsisting between the divine mind and the human which produces such results.”

4) The dictation theory.

This theory holds that the writers in inspiration were mere “pens.” It does

not take into consideration the differences in the styles of the writers.

b. The Bible view of inspiration.

1) This view of inspiration states that the Holy Spirit so guided and superintended the writers of the sacred text, making use of the writers unique personalities that they wrote all God wanted them to write without excess or error.

2) We do not know how the Holy “moved” men to write only what God wanted written but we do know they were guided through the process and it extended to the words not just the thoughts and concepts that were recorded.

3) The result of inspiration is the plenary and verbal recording of the Scripture.

a) Plenary means full, complete, whole, entire and comprehensive.

b) Verbal means expressed in words.

Matthew 5:18

Mat For verily I say unto you, Till heaven and earth pass, one jot or one tittle shall in no wise pass from the law, till all be fulfilled.5:18

Luke 16:17

Luke And it is easier for heaven and earth to pass, than one tittle of the law to fail.16:17

2 Timothy 3:16-17

2 Tim All scripture is given by inspiration of God, and is profitable for

doctrine, for reproof, for correction, for instruction
in righteousness:3:16

2 Tim That the man of God may be perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good
works.3:17

2 Peter 1:19-21

2 Pet 1:19 We have also a more sure word of prophecy; whereunto ye do well that
ye take heed, as unto a light that shineth in a dark place, until the day dawn, and the
day star arise in your hearts:

2 Pet Knowing this first, that no prophecy of the scripture is of any private
interpretation.1:20

2 Pet For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of
God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.1:21

Note: The word “law” does not always
refer to the Mosaic writings.

C. There is a distinction made between inspiration and authority.

1. All scripture is inspired.
2. All scripture is not authoritative.
 - a. Satan’s affirmation to Eve is inspired but not
authoritative in that it is a lie.

Genesis 3:4

Gen 3:4 And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die:

- b. Peter’s advice to Christ is inspired but not
authoritative in that it was mistaken.

Matthew 16:21-22

Mat From that time forth began Jesus to show unto his disciples, how that he must
go unto , and suffer many things of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be
killed, and be raised again the third day.16:21

Mat Then Peter took him, and began to rebuke him, saying, Be it far from thee,
Lord: this shall not be unto thee.16:22

III. The proofs of inspiration or evidences supporting the claims of
inspiration.

Christianity is reasonable and many reasons can be cited for the hope Christianity offers. Every believer should be able to cite reasons to others for believing the Scriptures to be inspired.

1 Peter 3:15

1 Pet But sanctify the Lord God in your hearts: and be ready always to give an answer to every man that asketh you a reason of the hope that is in you with meekness and fear:3:15

A. Inferential proofs associated with the doctrine of inspiration.

1. The marvelous character of God.
2. The character of Biblical writers.
3. The character of those who love the Bible.

B. The character and claims of the Bible attest to it's inspiration.

1. The Bible displays a marvelous unity which is to large of an phenomenon to be an accident.

a. More than 40 writers engaged in the composition of the Bible.

b. Three languages appear in the writing of the 66 books of the Bible.

- 1) Hebrew.
- 2) Chaldean.
- 3) Greek.

c. Approximately 1600 years were spanned in the writing of the Bible.

d. It was written in different countries.

- 1) Judea
- 2) .
- 3) Asia Minor
- 4) .
- 5) .

e. The authors represented various degrees of culture from the highest scholar (Paul) to the formally uneducated fisherman (Peter).

2. The forms of the unity found in the Scriptures.

a. There is unity in it's structure.

1) Although the Bible is composed of Old and New Testaments, they are of the same plan.

2) Both are historical, didactic and prophetic.

3) The New Testament for instance is historical in the Gospels, didactic (designed or intended to teach, intended to convey instruction and information, making moral observations) in the Epistles and Prophetic in the Revelation.

b. There is unity in the Person of whom the Bible speaks.

1) The central figure of the whole Bible is Jesus.

- 2) The Bible begins speaking of Jesus in the Book of Genesis.

Genesis 3:14-15

Gen 3:14 And the LORD God said unto the serpent, Because thou hast done this, thou art cursed above all cattle, and above every beast of the field; upon thy belly shalt thou go, and dust shalt thou eat all the days of thy life:

Gen And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.3:15

- 3) The Bible ends with Jesus speaking.

Revelation 22:20

Rev 22:20 He which testifieth these things saith, Surely I come quickly. Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus.

- 4) Jesus is pre-eminent throughout the entire Bible.

- c. There is unity in the theme of the Bible.

The theme of the Bible is salvation through suffering.
Isaiah 53:5-12

Isa 53:5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

Isa 53:6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

Isa 53:7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a

sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.

Isa 53:8 He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken.

Isa 53:9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no violence, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

Isa 53:10 Yet it pleased the LORD to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the LORD shall prosper in his hand.

Isa 53:11 He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

Isa 53:12 Therefore will I divide him a portion with the great, and he shall divide the spoil with the strong; because he hath poured out his soul unto death: and he was numbered with the transgressors; and he bare the sin of many, and made intercession for the transgressors.

d. There is unity in the goal of the Bible.

The goal of the Bible is the glorious triumph of Christ.

1 Corinthians 15:27-28

1 Cor For he hath put all things under his feet. But when he saith all things are put under him, it is manifest that he is excepted, which did put all things under him. 15:27

1 Cor 15:28 And when all things shall be subdued unto him, then shall the Son also

himself be subject unto him that put all things under him, that God may be all in all.

- e. There is unity in the doctrine of the Bible.
- f. There is unity in the moral standard of the Bible.
- g. There is unity in the one plan of salvation in the Bible.
- h. There is unity in the one program of the ages.

C. The indestructibility of the Bible attests to it's inspiration.

1. The efforts of Jehoiakim to destroy the Word of God was futile.

Jeremiah 36:22-23

Jer 36:22 Now the king sat in the winterhouse in the ninth month: and there was a fire on the hearth burning before him.

Jer 36:23 And it came to pass, that when Jehudi had read three or four leaves, he cut it with the penknife, and cast it into the fire that was on the hearth, until all the roll was consumed in the fire that was on the hearth.

2. The efforts of early philosophers to destroy the Word of God failed.
 - a. Celsus, a second century Epicurean philosopher is credited with a vicious attack on Christianity in 178 A. D. His attack upon Christianity failed.
 - b. Diocletion the emperor of from 284-305 A. D. was notorious for his severe persecution of the Christians. He issued an edict in 303 A. D. that all Bibles be destroyed. His efforts failed.
 - c. The papacy (Roman Catholicism) tried to stamp out Christianity and the Bible through the Spanish Inquisition but failed in her hellish efforts.

d. Heretics have made many efforts to destroy the Word of God but all have failed.

e. Infidels have made efforts to destroy the Word of God but all have failed.

1) Voltaire (1694-1778) said "In 100 years the Bible will be obsolete." Voltaire is dead and his home was turned into a center for Bible distribution.

A quote from Voltaire:

"The story of Zeus transforming himself into a swan so that he might couple with Leda, they call myth, but the tale about a holy ghost impregnating a virgin, they believe...".

2) Thomas Paine (1737-1809) espoused deism and made a violent criticism of Christianity in his book, Age of Reason. Thomas Paine is dead but Christianity and the Bible continues.

A quote from Thomas Paine's Age of Reason.

THESE books, beginning with Genesis and ending with Revelations, (which, by the way, is a book of riddles that requires a revelation to explain it) are, we are told, the word of God. It is, therefore, proper for us to know who told us so, that we may know what credit to give to the report. The answer to this question is, that nobody can tell, except that we tell one another so. The case, however, historically appears to be as follows:

When the church mythologists established their system, they collected all the writings they could find, and managed them as they pleased. It is a matter altogether of uncertainty to us whether such of the writings as now

appear under the name of the Old and the New Testament, are in the same state in which those collectors say they found them; or whether they added, altered, abridged, or dressed them up.

Be this as it may, they decided by vote which of the books out of the collection they had made, should be the WORD OF GOD, and which should not. They rejected several; they voted others to be doubtful, such as the books called the Apocrypha; and those books which had a majority of votes, were voted to be the word of God. Had they voted otherwise, all the people since calling themselves Christians had believed otherwise; for the belief of the one comes from the vote of the other. Who the people were that did all this, we know nothing of. They call themselves by the general name of the Church; and this is all we know of the matter.

3) Robert G. Ingersoll (1833-1899) is widely known for his opposition to Christianity. Ingersoll is dead but Christianity and the Bible are still alive.

A quote from Ingersoll:

Somebody ought to tell the truth about the Bible. The preachers dare not, because they would be driven from their pulpits. Professors in colleges dare not, because they would lose their salaries. Politicians dare not. They would be defeated. Editors dare not. They would lose subscribers. Merchants dare not, because they might lose customers. Men of fashion dare not, fearing that they would lose caste. Even clerks dare not, because they might be discharged. And so I thought I would do it myself.

There are many millions of people who believe the Bible to be the inspired word of God -- millions who think that this book is staff and guide, counselor and consoler; that it fills the present with peace and the future with hope -- millions who believe that it is the fountain of law, Justice and mercy, and that to its wise and benign teachings the world is indebted for its liberty, wealth and civilization -- millions who imagine that this book is a revelation from the wisdom and love of God to the brain and heart of man -- millions who regard this book as a torch that conquers the darkness of death, and pours its radiance on another world -- a world without a tear.

They forget its ignorance and savagery, its hatred of liberty, its religious persecution; they remember heaven, but they forget the dungeon of eternal pain. They forget that it imprisons the brain and corrupts the heart. They forget that it is the enemy of intellectual freedom. is my religion. of hand and brain -- of thought and labor, liberty is a word hated by kings -- loathed by popes. It is a word that shatters thrones and altars -- that leaves the crowned without subjects, and the outstretched hand of superstition without alms. is the blossom and fruit of justice -- the perfume of mercy. is the seed and soil, the air and light, the dew and rain of progress, love and joy.

D. If the Bible were not the supernatural Book inspired by God Himself, then it would not have been preserved for nearly 2000 years, would not have survived the attacks of atheists, infidels and humanist, would not have survived the attacks of those who have slaughtered millions in order to stamp out Christianity and the Bible, and would not have survived the attacks Satan has brought upon the church and the Bible.

The Bible is the Word of God. The Bible has God as it's source. The Bible has stood the test of time. The Bible will be the basis of judgment under which all men shall ultimately stand.

Basic Bible Doctrine

PART THREE

Theology---The Doctrine of God

I. The Godhead.

By Godhead is meant all collectively that enters into the concept of the Divine Being. It embraces all that makes God to be God and all that is included in absolute deity.

A. The effect of man's ignorance of God.

Romans 1:21

Rom Because that, when they knew God, they glorified him not as God, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened.1:21

1. Man has adequate opportunity to know God.

Romans 1:18-20

Rom For the wrath of God is revealed from heaven against all ungodliness and unrighteousness of men, who hold the truth in unrighteousness; 1:18

Rom Because that which may be known of God is manifest in them; for God hath showed it unto them.1:19

Rom For the invisible things of him from the creation of the world are clearly seen, being understood by the things that are made, even his eternal power and Godhead; so that they are without excuse:1:20

2. Man rejected the light God made available to him.

Romans 1:21-22

Rom Because that, when they knew God, they glorified him not as God, neither were thankful; but became vain in their imaginations, and their foolish heart was darkened.1:21

Rom Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools,1:22

3. Spiritual darkness resulted from mans ignorance and rejection of the light.

a. There is the darkness of idolatry.

Romans 1:23

Rom 1:23 And changed the glory of the uncorruptible God into an image made like to corruptible man, and to birds, and fourfooted beasts, and creeping things.

1)

2) Birds.

3) Beasts.

4) Creeping things.

b. There is the darkness of sensuality.

Romans 1:24-27

Rom Wherefore God also gave them up to uncleanness through the lusts of their own hearts, to dishonour their own bodies between themselves:1:24

Rom Who changed the truth of God into a lie, and worshipped and served the creature more than the Creator, who is blessed for ever. Amen.1:25

Rom For this cause God gave them up unto vile affections: for even their women did change the natural use into that which is against nature:1:26

Rom 1:27 And likewise also the men, leaving the natural use of the woman, burned in their lust one toward another; men with men working that which is unseemly, and receiving in themselves that recompense of their error which was meet.

c. There is the darkness of immorality.

Romans 1:28-32

Rom And even as they did not like to retain God in their knowledge, God gave them over to a reprobate mind, to do those things which are not convenient;1:28

Rom Being filled with all unrighteousness, fornication, wickedness, covetousness,

maliciousness; full of envy, murder, debate, deceit, malignity; whisperers, 1:29

Rom Backbiters, haters of God, spiteful, proud, boasters, inventors of evil things, disobedient to parents, 1:30

Rom Without understanding, covenantbreakers, without natural affection, implacable, unmerciful: 1:31

Rom Who knowing the judgment of God, that they which commit such things are worthy of death, not only do the same, but have pleasure in them that do them. 1:32

B. Who is the God of the Bible.

Genesis 1:1

Gen 1:1 In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.

1. In Hebrew the word "God" means a being of might and power.
2. As far as the Bible is concerned it gives no definition of

God but does declare He is Spirit, infinite, eternal, unchangeable, has wisdom, power, holiness, justice, goodness and truth.

3. God then is the infinite and perfect Spirit in Whom all things have their source and being.

Hebrews 11:3

Heb 11:3 Through faith we understand that the worlds were framed by the word of God, so that things which are seen were not made of things which do appear.

Acts 17:28-29

Acts For in him we live, and move, and have our being; as certain also of your own poets have said, For we are also his offspring.17:28

Acts 17:29 Forasmuch then as we are the offspring of God, we ought not to think that the Godhead is like unto gold, or silver, or stone, graven by art and man's device.

C. The existence or Being of God. Evidences of divine existence.

1. God's existence is taken for granted by the writers of the Scriptures.
 - a. The Bible affirms the existence of God in Genesis 1:1.
 - b. None of the inspired writers sought to prove the existence of God.
 - c. The existence of God is engraved upon the heart of every man, woman, boy and girl all over the world. No one has to be taught there is a God. This knowledge is put into the heart of every baby at birth.
2. There are many theories relating to the existence of God.
 - a. There is the Theism theory.
 - 1) This theory comes from the Greek word "theos" meaning God.
 - 2) Theism is the doctrine of a personal God who is creator, preserver and ruler of all things.
 - b. There is the Deism theory.
 - 1) This is a belief in the existence of God

but denies His providence (rule and control).

2) Deism states that God created and then detached Himself from that creation leaving it to go it's own way.

c. There is the Pantheism theory.

1) In pantheism, God is an impersonal God contained in material things.

2) The pantheist believes God exists but only in material things.

Note: The Deist shuts God out of the world while the Pantheist shuts Him in.

d. There is the Polytheism theory.

1) This is a belief in many gods.

2) The sun god, the moon god, the crop god, the love god, the harvest god, etc.,.

e. There is the Atheism theory.

1) This is a flat out denial of the existence of God.

2) This is a denial of the knowledge of God within the spirit of every person born.

Psalm 14:1

Psa 14:1 To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David. The fool hath said in his heart, There is no God. They are corrupt, they have done abominable works, there is none that doeth good.

Psalm 53:1

Psa 53:1 To the chief Musician upon Mahalath, Maschil, A Psalm of David. The fool hath said in his heart, There is no God. Corrupt are they, and have done abominable iniquity: there is none that doeth good.

f. There is the Infidel theory.

- 1) This is a denial of the divinity of Christ and is marked by unbelief.
- 2) The Greek word “apistos” meaning without faith, hence, unbeliever is ascribed to the persons holding to this theory.

2 Corinthians 6:15

2 Cor And what concord hath Christ with Belial? or what part hath he that believeth with an infidel?6:15

1 Timothy 5:8

1 Tim 5:8 But if any provide not for his own, and specially for those of his own house, he hath denied the faith, and is worse than an infidel.

g. There is the Skepticism theory.

- 1) This is the belief that real knowledge concerning God is impossible.
- 2) It is the refusal to accept the many

evidences of God by refusing any validity to be placed upon those evidences.

h. There is the Gnosticism theory.

- 1) The word “Gnosticism” comes from the Greek word “gnosis” meaning knowledge.
- 2) This is the belief that knowledge of God can be obtained only through pure reason.
- 3) The person falling into this theory could well be termed “ A Know It All.”
- 4) Gnostics believe the priority of existence is as follows:
 - a) God the first in existence.
 - b) Angels the second in existence.
 - c) Jesus the third in existence.
 - d) Knowing Ones the fourth in existence.
 - e) All else comes last in existence.

i. There is the Agnosticism theory.

- 1) This is the belief that the existence of God can not be known or knowable.
- 2) This is the belief that the nature of God, if He does exist, can not be known or knowable.
- 3) This is the belief that the ultimate origin of the universe can not be known or knowable.
- 4) Agnosticism differs from Atheism in

that it is not necessarily a denial of God but rather that one simply can not know whether God exists or does not exist.

3. Scientists can neither prove nor disprove the existence of God.

a. God is Spirit.

John 4:24

John God is a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth.4:24

b. Because God is Spirit, He can not be perceived by the natural senses (sight, hearing, feeling, taste, smell).

c. The spiritual can not be tested in the laboratory or understood by finite reasoning.

4. Arguments for the existence of God.

a. There is the universal belief argument relating to the existence of God.

1) Proof of this fact is found in that no tribes of peoples have ever been found who did not have some concept of a supreme being.

2) The source of this universal belief in God.

a) Negatively:

(1) The source of this belief is not from reason or argument. Many men of great intellectual powers do not believe in God.

(2) The source of this belief is not tradition. There was no tradition until someone had begun it.

(3) The source of this belief
is not from the Scripture. Man believed in God before the Bible was written.

b) Positively:

(1) The source is from within
for man seeks something bigger than self to which to anchor.

(2) The source is from within
for the soul of man cries out for something which pure knowledge or material
possession can not give.

Ecclesiastes 1:8

Eccl 1:8 All things are full of labour; man cannot utter it: the eye is not satisfied
with seeing, nor the ear filled with hearing.

Ecclesiastes 2:4-11

Eccl 2:4 I made me great works; I builded me houses; I planted me vineyards:

Eccl 2:5 I made me gardens and orchards, and I planted trees in them of all kind of
fruits:

Eccl 2:6 I made me pools of water, to water therewith the wood that bringeth forth
trees:

Eccl 2:7 I got me servants and maidens, and had servants born in my house; also I had great possessions of great and small cattle above all that were in before me:

Eccl 2:8 I gathered me also silver and gold, and the peculiar treasure of kings and of the provinces: I gat me men singers and women singers, and the delights of the sons of men, as musical instruments, and that of all sorts.

Eccl 2:9 So I was great, and increased more than all that were before me in : also my wisdom remained with me.

Eccl 2:10 And whatsoever mine eyes desired I kept not from them, I withheld not my heart from any joy; for my heart rejoiced in all my labour: and this was my portion of all my labour.

Eccl Then I looked on all the works that my hands had wrought, and on the labour t hat I had laboured to do: and, behold, all was vanity and vexation of spirit, and there was no profit under the sun.2:11

(3) Man has always considered the question of what follows death

Note: These positive yearnings are from within, not placed there by man but by the higher Being, God Himself.

b. There is the intuition argument.

Intuition means direct knowledge. Man perceived the fact of such things without reasoning. This characteristic of man is implanted and stamped with the being of man by God.

1) There is intuition of relations such as time and space.

2) There is intuition of principles such as substances, cause and effect as well as right and wrong.

3) There is intuition of absolute being.

4) There is intuition of power.

5) There is intuition of reason.

6) There is intuition of perfection.

7) There is intuition of personality.

c. There is the cosmological argument relating to

cause.

- 1) There are only two ways to account for the material universe.
 - a) It is eternal, therefore not created.
 - b) It is created, therefore not eternal.
 - 2) To believe the material universe is eternal is to ascribe intelligence to matter.
 - 3) To believe the material universe is created is to ascribe intelligence to an intelligent creative God.
 - 4) The nature of material things as they conform to laws of order, motion, growth etc. reveals intelligence apart from the matter making it more reasonable and logical to believe in an intelligent creative God than it is to ascribe intelligence to matter.
- c. There is the teleological argument having to do with design or purpose.
- 1) Animate and inanimate objects conform to recognized laws of nature. The movements of planets conform to a set time table. There is uniformity of design and regularity of movement and growth. Regularity of movement indicates a Supreme Governor and Design indicates a Supreme designer.
 - 2) “Vestigial organ” have been used to challenge the teleological argument. However, the question “Are there such organs” can be asked. Many organs which were originally classified as “vestigial organs” are now known to have a definite function.
 - 3) God is the intelligent power behind these things.

Colossians 1:16-17

Col 1:16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

And he is before all things, and by him all things consist.1:17

d. There is the ontological argument having to do with a philosophical analysis of reality or existence. Man is finite yet he has an idea of infinite values.

a. Man has an idea of an infinite and perfect Being. Where did this idea come from. Did it come from finite and imperfect men like ourselves? Therefore, the ontological argument argues for the existence of an infinite and perfect Being. Such a Being must exist as a person and not as a mere thought.

b. More simply stated. The very idea that God exists is proof that He exists.

e. There is the anthropological argument having to do with moral issues as related to the existence and nature of man.

1) Man has intelligence. This requires the creator of man to be an intelligent Being.

2) Man has a moral nature. This requires

the creator of man to be a moral Being. The moral nature of man proves the existence of a holy lawgiver and judge.

3) Man is emotional. This requires the creator of man to satisfy the emotional needs of man.

4) Man has a conscience. Conscience is

that which is within man defining what is right or wrong.

Romans 2:15

Rom Which show the work of the law written in their hearts, their conscience also bearing witness, and their thoughts the mean while accusing or else excusing one another;)2:15

- f. There is the congruity argument having to do with agreement or fitness.
 - 1) That which best fits all known phenomena is probably the best explanation. For example: If a key fits all locks in a given building, it must be the right key.
 - 2) The existence and nature of God best answers all questions.
- g. There is the Scriptural argument having to do with the supernatural nature of the Bible.
 - 1) There is the argument of fulfilled prophecy.
 - 2) There is the argument that the Bible and science are in agreement in many areas.
 - 3) There is the argument that archeology strengthens the authority of the Bible.
 - a) Carbon dating.
 - b) Evidences of Noah's flood.
 - c) Dates of books having been proven by archeological discoveries.
- h. There is the conversion argument having to do with the radical changes which sometimes takes place in the conversion of a wicked sinner.

1) There is no other explanation for these radical changes than the existence of God working His will in the life of a wicked sinner.

2) The changed character and nature of man can not come about by man's resolution to change. Permanent and lasting change can be effected only through an existent God.

D. The nature of God as revealed in His names.

1. General names by which God is known.

a. El.

1) El is an important root name for God in the Old Testament. By itself it refers to a god in the most general sense.

2) It was widely used in ancient eastern cultures whose languages are similar to Hebrew and therefore may refer either to the true God or to false gods. The highest Canaanite god was El whose son was Baal.

3) In the Bible the word is often defined properly by a qualifier like Jehovah:

Deuteronomy 5:9

Deu 5:9 I, the LORD (Jehovah) your God (Elohim), am a jealous God (El)
b. Elohim.

1) Elohim has reference to the sum total of power, the all powerful God. The word is used 2570 times in the Old Testament.

2) Elohim is the plural form of El, but it is usually translated in the singular.

3) Some scholars have held that the plural

represents an intensified form for the supreme God; others believe it describes the supreme God and His heavenly court of created beings. Still others hold that the plural form refers to the triune God of Genesis 1:1-3 who worked through Word and Spirit in the creation of the world. All agree that the plural form Elohim does convey the sense of the one supreme being who is the only true God.

Genesis 1:1-3

Gen 1:1 In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.

Gen 1:2 And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.

Gen 1:3 And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.

c. Elyon.

1) Has reference to the most high God, the Supreme deity and the ruler of the universe.

Genesis 14:17-20

Gen 14:17 And the king of Sodom went out to meet him after his return from the slaughter of Chedorlaomer, and of the kings that were with him, at the valley of Shaveh, which is the king's dale.

Gen And Melchizedek king of brought forth bread and wine: and he was the priest of the most high God.14:18

Gen And he blessed him, and said, Blessed be Abram of the most high God, possessor of heaven and earth:14:19

Gen And blessed be the most high God, which hath delivered thine enemies into thy hand. And he gave him tithes of all.14:20

d. Adonai.

- 1) This name implies that God is the owner of the human race and demands obedience from it.

Malichi 1:6

Mal 1:6 A son honoureth his father, and a servant his master: if then I be a father, where is mine honour? and if I be a master, where is my fear? saith the LORD of hosts unto you, O priests, that despise my name. And ye say, Wherein have we despised thy name?

- 2) The divine name Yahweh is usually translated Lord in English versions of the Bible, because it became a practice in late Old Testament Judaism not to pronounce the sacred name YHWH, but to say instead "my Lord" (Adonai)-- a practice still used today in the synagogue. When the vowels of Adonai were attached to the consonants YHWH in the medieval period, the word Jehovah resulted. Today, many Christians use the word Yahweh, the more original pronunciation, not hesitating to name the divine name since Jesus taught believers to speak in a familiar way to God.

e. Jehovah.

- 1) This is a special name for God. It is the covenant name of God.
- 2) The name, Jehovah, first appeared in Genesis chapter 4.

3) It is the most frequently used name in the Old Testament. It appears approximately 6820 times in the Old Testament.

4) The origin and meaning of the name, Jehovah, is found in Exodus 3:13-15.

Exodus 3:13-15

Exo 3:13 And Moses said unto God, Behold, when I come unto the children of Israel, and shall say unto them, The God of your fathers hath sent me unto you; and they shall say to me, What is his name? what shall I say unto them?

Exo And God said unto Moses, I AM THAT I AM: and he said, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of , I AM hath sent me unto you.3:14

Exo 3:15 And God said moreover unto Moses, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of Israel, The LORD God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, hath sent me unto you: this is my name for ever, and this is my memorial unto all generations.

5) Jehovah is one of the most important names for God in the Old Testament. The root word is Yahweh, or Jehovah, from the verb "to be," meaning simply but profoundly, "I am who I am," and "I will be who I will be." The four-letter Hebrew word YHWH was the name by which God revealed Himself to Moses in the burning bush Ex. 3:14. This bush was a vivid symbol of the inexhaustible dynamism of God who burns like a fire with love and righteousness, yet remains the same and never diminishes. Some English translations of the Bible

translate the word as Jehovah, while others use Yahweh.

God is the author of life and salvation. His "I am" expresses the fact that He is the infinite and original personal God who is behind everything and to whom everything must finally be traced. This name, "I am who I am," signals the truth that nothing else defines who God is but God Himself. What He says and does is who He is. The inspired Scriptures are the infallible guide to understanding who God is by what He says about Himself and what He does. Yahweh is the all-powerful and sovereign God who alone defines Himself and establishes truth for His creatures and works for their salvation.

- a) The name implies self-existence.
- b) The name implies self-sufficiency.
- c) The name implies immutability.

Malichi 3:6

Mal 3:6 For I am the LORD, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

2. Particular names given to God.

- a. Jehovah-Tsidkenu meaning The Lord our righteousness.

Jeremiah 23:6

Jer 23:6 In his days shall be saved, and shall dwell safely: and this is his name whereby he shall be called, THE LORD OUR RIGHTEOUSNESS. Judah

- b. Jehovah-Mekaddaschen meaning The Lord our sanctification.

Exodus 31:13

Exo 31:13 Speak thou also unto the children of , saying, Verily my sabbaths ye shall keep: for it is a sign between me and you throughout your generations; that ye may know that I am the LORD that doth sanctify you.

- c. Jehovah-Jireh meaning The Lord will provide commemorating the provision of the ram in place of Isaac for Abraham's sacrifice.

Genesis 22:14-18

Gen And Abraham called the name of that place Jehovahjireh: as it is said to this day, In the mount of the LORD it shall be seen. 22:14

Gen And the angel of the LORD called unto Abraham out of heaven the second time,22:15

Gen And said, By myself have I sworn, saith the LORD, for because thou hast done this thing, and hast not withheld thy son, thine only son:22:16

Gen 22:17 That in blessing I will bless thee, and in multiplying I will multiply thy seed as the stars of the heaven, and as the sand which is upon the sea shore; and thy seed shall possess the gate of his enemies;

Gen And in thy seed shall all the nations of the earth be blessed; because thou hast obeyed my voice.22:18

d. Jehovah-Shalom meaning The Lord our peace.

This is the name Gideon gave the altar which he built in Ophrah.

Judges 6:24

Judg Then Gideon built an altar there unto the LORD,
and called it Jehovahshalom: unto this day it is yet in Ophrah of the Abiezrites. 6:2
4

Isaiah 26:3

Isa 26:3 Thou wilt keep him in perfect peace, whose mind is stayed on thee: because
he trusteth in thee.

e. Jehovah-Nissi meaning The Lord our banner.

This name is given in honor of God's defeat of the Amalekites.

Exodus 17:15

Exo And Moses built an altar, and called the name of it Jehovahnissi:17:15

f. Jehovah-Rapha meaning The Lord our healer.

Psalms 103:1-3

Psa 103:1 A Psalm of David. Bless the LORD, O my soul: and all that is within me,
bless his holy name.

Psa 103:2 Bless the LORD, O my soul, and forget not all his benefits:

Psa 103:3 Who forgiveth all thine iniquities; who healeth all thy diseases;

g. Jehovah-Raah meaning The Lord our shepherd.

Psalms 23:1

Psa 23:1 A Psalm of David. The LORD is my shepherd; I shall not want.

h. Jehovah-Shammah meaning The Lord is there.

This phrase expresses the truth that "The-LORD-Is-There," referring to the city
which the prophet Ezekiel saw in his vision.

Ezekiel 48:35

Ezek 48:35 It was round about eighteen thousand measures: and the name of the city
from that day shall be, The LORD is there.

E. The nature of God as revealed by His attributes. These are
absolute attributes and not relative as with man.

1. Self-existence.

Exodus 3:14

Exo And God said unto Moses, I AM THAT I AM: and he said, Thus shalt thou say unto the children of , I AM hath sent me unto you.3:14

2. Eternity.

Psalms 90:1-2

Psa 90:1 A Prayer of Moses the man of God. LORD, thou hast been our dwelling place in all generations.

Psa 90:2 Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever thou hast formed the earth and the world, even from everlasting to everlasting, thou art God.

Psalms 102:24

Psa 102:24 I said, O my God, take me not away in the midst of my days: thy years are throughout all generations.

Isaiah 57:15

Isa 57:15 For thus saith the high and lofty One that inhabiteth eternity, whose name is Holy; I dwell in the high and holy place, with him also that is of a contrite and humble spirit, to revive the spirit of the humble, and to revive the heart of the contrite ones.

3. Immutability meaning God can not change to the better

or worse for He is perfect. He can never be wiser, more holy, more just or more truthful.

Malachi 3:6

Mal 3:6 For I am the LORD, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

James 1:17

James 1:17 Every good gift and every perfect gift is from above, and cometh down from the Father of lights, with whom is no variableness, neither shadow of turning.

Hebrews 13:8

Heb 13:8 Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever.

4. Infinity (unlimited).

Jeremiah 23:24

Jer 23:24 Can any hide himself in secret places that I shall not see him? saith the LORD. Do not I fill heaven and earth? saith the LORD.

5. Holiness.

Isaiah 6:3

Isa 6:3 And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the LORD of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory.

6. Goodness.

Mark 10:18

Mark 10:18 And Jesus said unto him, Why callest thou me good? there is none good but one, that is, God.

Psalm 31:19

Psa 31:19 Oh how great is thy goodness, which thou hast laid up for them that fear thee; which thou hast wrought for them that trust in thee before the sons of men!

7. Truth.

Psalm 31:5

Psa 31:5 Into thine hand I commit my spirit: thou hast redeemed me, O LORD God of truth.

8. Love.

John 3:16

John For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.3:16

1 John 4:8

1 John 4:8 He that loveth not knoweth not God; for God is love.

II. The Trinity of God.

Definition: In the nature of one God, there are three eternal distinctions which are presented to us under the figure of three persons and these three are equal.

A. Three Beings are recognized as God.

1. The Father is recognized as God.

1 Peter 1:2

1 Pet 1:2 Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ: Grace unto you, and peace, be multiplied.

John 6:27

John Labour not for the meat which perisheth, but for that meat which endureth unto everlasting life, which the Son of man shall give unto you: for him hath God the Father sealed.6:27

2. Jesus Christ is recognized as God.

John 1:1

John 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

Romans 9:5

Rom 9:5 Whose are the fathers, and of whom as concerning the flesh Christ came, who is over all, God blessed for ever. Amen.

Titus 2:13

Titus 2:13 Looking for that blessed hope, and the glorious appearing of the great God and our Saviour Jesus Christ;

3. The Holy Spirit is recognized as God.

Acts 5:3-4

Acts 5:3 But Peter said, Ananias, why hath Satan filled thine heart to lie to the Holy Ghost, and to keep back part of the price of the land?

Acts 5:4 Whiles it remained, was it not thine own? and after it was sold, was it not in thine own power? why hast thou conceived this thing in thine heart? thou hast not lied unto men, but unto God.

- B. The three Beings are so described that they must be recognized as distinct persons.

1. The Father and Son are distinct Persons.

- a. The Father bears witness of the Son.

John 5:36-37

John 5:36 But I have greater witness than that of John: for the works which the Father hath given me to finish, the same works that I do, bear witness of me, that the Father hath sent me.

John 5:37 And the Father himself, which hath sent me, hath borne witness of me. Ye have neither heard his voice at any time, nor seen his shape.

- b. The Son was begotten by the Father.

Psalms 2:7

Psa 2:7 I will declare the decree: the LORD hath said unto me, Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee.

- c. The Son was sent by the Father.

Galatians 4:4

Gal 4:4 But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of

a woman, made under the law,

2. The Father and Son are distinct Persons from the Holy Spirit.

John 14:16-17

John 14:16 And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever;

John Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.14:17

- C. The three Persons in the Godhead have always existed eternally.

1. The Father is eternal.

Psalm 90:2

Psa 90:2 Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever thou hadst formed the earth and the world, even from everlasting to everlasting, thou art God.

2. Christ is eternal.

John 1:1

John 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

3. The Holy Spirit is eternal.

Hebrews 9:14

Heb 9:14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

- D. The three Persons are equal with rank, authority, power and force.

- E. The Trinity can not be fully comprehended.

III. God the Father.

John 1:12

John 1:12 But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons

of God, even to them that believe on his name:

Galatians 3:26

Gal 3:26 For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus.

A. The personality of God the Father

1. Personality of the Father is inferred by our own personality.
2. Personality of the Father is inferred by man's religious life.
3. Personality of the Father is uniformly taught in the Bible to the effect that God is a Person.
 - a. Personality is implied in the names given to God after man's creation.
 - b. Personality is implied in the use of Personal pronouns used in connection to the Father.

John 17:3

John 17:3 And this is life eternal, that they might know thee the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom thou hast sent.

Psalms 116:1-2

Psa 116:1 I love the LORD, because he hath heard my voice and my supplications.

Psa 116:2 Because he hath inclined his ear unto me, therefore will I call upon him as long as I live.

- c. Personality is implied in the personal characteristics that are applied to the Father.
 - 1) Grief.

Genesis 6:6

Gen 6:6 And it repented the LORD that he had made man on the earth, and it grieved him at his heart.

2) Anger.

1 Kings 11:9

1 Ki 11:9 And the LORD was angry with Solomon, because his heart was turned

from the LORD God of , which had appeared unto him twice,

3) Jealousy.

Deuteronomy 6:15

Deu 6:15 (For the LORD thy God is a jealous God among you) lest the anger of the LORD thy God be kindled against

thee, and destroy thee from off the face of the earth.

4) Love.

Revelation 3:19

Rev 3:19 As many as I love, I rebuke and chasten: be zealous therefore, and repent.

5) Hatred.

Proverbs 6:16-19

Prov These six things doth the LORD hate: yea, seven are an abomination unto him:
6:16

Prov A proud look, a lying tongue, and hands that shed innocent blood,6:17

Prov An heart that deviseth wicked imaginations, feet that be swift in running to mischief,6:18

Prov A false witness that speaketh lies, and he that soweth discord among brethren.6
:19

d. Personality is implied in the relationship which
God sustains to the universe and to man.

1) God is creator of the universe.

Genesis 1:26

Gen 1:26 And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.

2) God is preserver of the universe.

Hebrews 1:3

Heb 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high;

3) God is ruler over the affairs of man.

Romans 8:28

Rom 8:28 And we know that all things work together for good to them that love God, to them who are the called according to his purpose.

B. The attributes (essential characteristics) of God the Father.

1. Non-moral attributes meaning those attributes which do not pertain to His moral nature. These attributes are viewed as being neither good nor bad.

a. Immutability (never changing).

Malachi 3:6

Mal 3:6 For I am the LORD, I change not; therefore ye sons of Jacob are not consumed.

b. Omniscience (all knowing).

1) The fact of God's omniscience.

1 John 3:20

1 John 3:20 For if our heart condemn us, God is greater than our heart, and knoweth all things.

2) Examples of God's omniscience.

a) God sees all that occurs in every place.

Proverbs 15:3

Prov 15:3 The eyes of the LORD are in every place, beholding the evil and the good.

b) God knows everything in the universe.

Psalms 147:4

Psa 147:4 He telleth the number of the stars; he calleth them all by their names.

c) God knows all men's experiences and locations.

Psalms 139:2-3

Psa 139:2 Thou knowest my downsitting and mine uprising, thou understandest my thought afar off.

Psa 139:3 Thou compassest my path and my lying down, and art acquainted with all my ways.

Proverbs 5:21

Prov 5:21 For the ways of man are before the eyes of the LORD, and he pondereth all his goings.

- d) God knows every word that man speaks.

Psalm 139:4

Psa 139:4 For there is not a word in my tongue, but, lo, O LORD, thou knowest it altogether.

- e) God knows all human sorrow.

Exodus 3:7

Exo 3:7 And the LORD said, I have surely seen the affliction of my people which are in , and have heard their cry by reason of their taskmasters; for I know their sorrows;

f) God understands the imaginations and thoughts of men.

1 Chronicles 28:9

1 Chr 28:9 And thou, Solomon my son, know thou the God of thy father, and serve him with a perfect heart and with a willing mind: for the LORD searcheth all hearts, and understandeth all the imaginations of the thoughts: if thou seek him, he will be found of thee; but if thou forsake him, he will cast thee off for ever.

g) God knows the most minute particulars concerning His creatures.

Matthew 10:29-30

Mat 10:29 Are not two sparrows sold for a farthing? and one of them shall not fall on the ground without your Father.

Mat But the very hairs of your head are all numbered.10:30

h) God knows from eternity past what shall be in eternity future.

Acts 15:18

Acts Known unto God are all his works from the beginning of the world.15:18

c. Omnipotence (all powerful).

- 1) All nature is subject to God's will and word.

Genesis 1:3

Gen 1:3 And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.

- 2) All men are subject to God's will and word.

John 4:12-15

John Art thou greater than our father Jacob, which gave us the well, and drank thereof himself, and his children, and his cattle?4:12

John Jesus answered and said unto her, Whosoever drinketh of this water shall thirst again:4:13

John But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life.4:14

John 4:15 The woman saith unto him, Sir, give me this water, that I thirst not, neither come hither to draw.

- 3) All angels are subject to God's will and word.

Psalms 103:20

Psa 103:20 Bless the LORD, ye his angels, that excel in strength, that do his

commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word.

4) Satan is subject to God's will and word.

Job 2:6

Job 2:6 And the LORD said unto Satan, Behold, he is in thine hand; but save his life.

d. Omnipresence (everywhere at once).

1) Evidence of omnipresence is proved
from reason.

All men (everywhere) have some concept of a higher power.

Acts 17:28-30

Acts For in him we live, and move, and have our being; as certain also of your own poets have said, For we are also his offspring.17:28

Acts 17:29 Forasmuch then as we are the offspring of God, we ought not to think that the Godhead is like unto gold, or silver, or stone, graven by art and man's device.

Acts 17:30 And the times of this ignorance God winked at; but now commandeth all men every where to repent:

Titus 2:11-12

Titus 2:11 For the grace of God that bringeth salvation hath appeared to all men,

Titus 2:12 Teaching us that, denying ungodliness and worldly lusts, we should

live soberly, righteously, and godly, in this present world;

2) Evidence of omnipresence is proved from scriptures.

1 Kings 8:27

1 Ki 8:27 But will God indeed dwell on the earth? behold, the heaven and heaven of heavens cannot contain thee; how much less this house that I have builded?

Psalm 139:7-10

Psa 139:7 Whither shall I go from thy spirit? or whither shall I flee from thy presence?

Psa 139:8 If I ascend up into heaven, thou art there: if I make my bed in hell, behold, thou art there.

Psa 139:9 If I take the wings of the morning, and dwell in the uttermost parts of the sea;

Psa 139:10 Even there shall thy hand lead me, and thy right hand shall hold me.

e. Eternity.

Psalm 90:1-2

Psa 90:1 A Prayer of Moses the man of God. LORD, thou hast been our dwelling place in all generations.

Psa 90:2 Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever thou hadst formed the earth and the world, even from everlasting to everlasting, thou art God.

Psalm 102:24-27

Psa 102:24 I said, O my God, take me not away in the midst of my days: thy years are throughout all generations.

Psa 102:25 Of old hast thou laid the foundation of the earth: and the heavens are the work of thy hands.

Psa 102:26 They shall perish, but thou shalt endure: yea, all of them shall wax old like a garment; as a vesture shalt thou change them, and they shall be changed:

Psa 102:27 But thou art the same, and thy years shall have no end.

f. Sovereignty.

The absolute right of God to dispose of all His creatures as His pleasure desires. This means God is at liberty to do what-so-ever He chooses to do.

- 1) He is above all potentates, kings and lords.

1 Timothy 6:15-16

1 Tim Which in his times he shall show, who is the blessed and only Potentate, the King of kings, and Lord of lords;6:15

1 Tim Who only hath immortality, dwelling in the light which no man can approach unto; whom no man hath seen, nor can see: to whom be honour and power everlasting. Amen.6:16

- 2) All things were created for His pleasure.

Revelation 4:11

Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for

thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created.Rev 4:11

- 3) The Lord makes disposition of all things accordingly as He wills.

Romans 9:15

Rom For he saith to Moses, I will have mercy on whom I will have mercy, and I will have compassion on whom I will have compassion.9:15

- 4) God rules in the kingdom of men and has His way. He also governs the armies of heaven.

Daniel 4:25, 35

Dan 4:25 That they shall drive thee from men, and thy dwelling shall be with the beasts of the field, and they shall make thee to eat grass as oxen, and they shall wet thee with the dew of heaven, and seven times shall pass over thee, till thou know that the most High ruleth in the kingdom of men, and giveth it to whomsoever he will.

Dan And all the inhabitants of the earth are reputed as nothing: and he doeth according to his will in the army of heaven, and among the inhabitants of the earth: and none can stay his hand, or say unto him, What doest thou?4:35

- a) His infinite superiority of Being proves His sovereignty.
- b) All creatures came to be through His mighty power.

Romans 11:36

Rom For of him, and through him, and to him, are all

things: to whom be glory for ever. Amen. 11:36

2. Moral attributes of God.

a. Holiness.

1) The fact of God's holiness.

Isaiah 6:3

Isa 6:3 And one cried unto another, and said, Holy, holy, holy, is the LORD of hosts: the whole earth is full of his glory.

Psalm 99:5

Psa 99:5 Exalt ye the LORD our God, and worship at his footstool; for he is holy.

2. How the holiness of God is manifested.

a) It is manifested in His utter opposition to that which is contrary to His nature.

b) It is manifested in His separating the sinner from Himself.

c) It is manifested in punishment of the sinner.

Exodus 34:6-7

Exo 34:6 And the LORD passed by before him, and proclaimed, The LORD, The LORD God, merciful and gracious, longsuffering, and abundant in goodness and truth,

Exo 34:7 Keeping mercy for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, and that will by no means clear the guilty;

visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children,
and upon the children's children, unto the third and to the fourth generation.

b. Love.

The attribute of love indicates the action of God moving to seek the highest good for His creatures.

1) The fact of God's love.

1 John 4:8, 16, 19

1 John 4:8 He that loveth not knoweth not God; for God is love.

1 John And we have known and believed the love that God hath to us. God is love; and he that dwelleth in love dwelleth in God, and God in him.4:16

1 John We love him, because he first loved us.4:19

2) The whom of God's love.

a) God loves Jesus Christ.

Matthew 3:17

Mat And lo a voice from heaven, saying, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased.3:17

Matthew 17:5

Mat 17:5 While he yet spake, behold, a bright cloud overshadowed them: and behold a voice out of the cloud, which said, This is my beloved Son, in whom I am well pleased; hear ye him.

b) God loves those who are united
to Christ by faith.

John 17:23, 26

John 17:23 I in them, and thou in me, that they may be made perfect in one; and that the world may know that thou hast sent me, and hast loved them, as thou hast loved me.

John And I have declared unto them thy name, and will declare it: that the love wherewith thou hast loved me may be in them, and I in them.17:26

c) God loves the world.

John 3:16-17

John 3:16 For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.

John For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved.3:17

1 Timothy 2:4

1 Tim 2:4 Who will have all men to be saved, and to come unto the knowledge of the truth.

2 Peter 3:9

2 Pet 3:9 The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not

willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.

d) God loves the sinner.

Romans 5:8

Rom 5:8 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

3) The manner in which God's love is manifested.

a) In administering to the needs and protection His own.

Isaiah 48:14

Isa 48:14 All ye, assemble yourselves, and hear; which among them hath declared these things? The LORD hath loved him: he will do his pleasure on , and his arm shall be on the Chaldeans.

Isaiah 14:20-21

Isa Thou shalt not be joined with them in burial, because thou hast destroyed thy land, and slain thy people: the seed of evildoers shall never be renowned.14:20

Isa Prepare slaughter for his children for the iniquity of their fathers; that they do not rise, nor possess the land, nor fill the face of the world with cities.14:21

b) In chastening His children.

Hebrews 12:6-8

Heb 12:6 For whom the Lord loveth he chasteneth, and scourgeth every son whom he receiveth.

Heb 12:7 If ye endure chastening, God dealeth with you as with sons; for what son is he whom the father chasteneth not?

Heb 12:8 But if ye be without chastisement, whereof all are partakers, then are ye bastards, and not sons.

- c) In sharing the affliction of His own.

Isaiah 63:9

Isa 63:9 In all their affliction he was afflicted, and the angel of his presence saved them: in his love and in his pity he redeemed them; and he bare them, and carried them all the days of old.

- d) In making great sacrifice for the believers.

Ephesians 2:4-7

Eph 2:4 But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us,

Eph 2:5 Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;)

Eph 2:6 And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus:

Eph 2:7 That in the ages to come he might show the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus.

- e) By quickening (making alive) the sinner while dead in trespasses and sin.

Ephesians 2:1

Eph 2:1 And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins:

- f) In calling us to be sons of God.

1 John 3:1-2

1 John 3:1 Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not.

1 John 3:2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.

g) In rejoicing over saved ones.

Zephaniah 3:17

Zep 3:17 The LORD thy God in the midst of thee is mighty; he will save, he will rejoice over thee with joy; he will rest in his love, he will joy over thee with singing.

c. Righteousness and justice. This refers to that

aspect of God's holiness which is seen in His treatment of His creatures.

- 1) The fact of God's righteousness and justice.

Psalm 145:17

Psa 145:17 The LORD is righteous in all his ways, and holy in all his works.

- 2) How the righteousness and justice of God are manifested.

- a) In visiting judgment upon sinners.

Revelation 16:5-6

Rev 16:5 And I heard the angel of the waters say, Thou art righteous, O Lord, which art, and wast, and shalt be, because thou hast judged thus.

Rev 16:6 For they have shed the blood of saints and prophets, and thou hast given them blood to drink; for they are worthy.

- b) In bestowing rewards upon the righteous.

2 Timothy 4:8

2 Tim 4:8 Henceforth there is laid up for me a crown of righteousness, which the Lord, the righteous judge, shall give me at that day: and not to me only, but unto all them also that love his appearing.

- c) In keeping His promise to His covenanted people.

Galatians 3:17

Gal 3:17 And this I say, that the covenant, that was confirmed before of God in Christ, the law, which was four hundred and thirty years after, cannot disannul, that it should make the promise of none effect.

- d) In providing propitiation (the satisfying payment) for His people's sins.

1 John 2:1

1 John 2:1 My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous:

Romans 3:25

Rom Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;3:25

e) In forgiving confessed sin.

1 John 1:9

1 John 1:9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

d. Faithfulness is that attribute of God that leads Him to fulfill all His promises.

1) The fact of God's faithfulness.

2 Timothy 2:13

2 Tim If we believe not, yet he abideth faithful: he cannot deny himself. 2:13

2) The extent of God's faithfulness.

a) It reaches to heaven.

Psalm 36:5

Psa 36:5 Thy mercy, O LORD, is in the heavens; and thy faithfulness reacheth unto the clouds.

b) It is unto all generations.

Psalm 119:90

Psa 119:90 Thy faithfulness is unto all generations: thou hast established the earth, and it abideth.

c) It extends to all His works.

1 Corinthians 1:9

1 Cor 1:9 God is faithful, by whom ye were called unto the fellowship of his Son Jesus Christ our Lord.

Philippians 1:6

Phil 1:6 Being confident of this very thing, that he which hath begun a good work in you will perform it until the day of Jesus Christ:

3) How God's faithfulness is manifested.

- a) In keeping covenants with His people.

1 Kings -238:22

1 Ki And Solomon stood before the altar of the LORD in the presence of all the congregation of , and spread forth his hands toward heaven:8:22

1 Ki 8:23 And he said, LORD God of , there is no God like thee, in heaven above, or on earth beneath, who keepest covenant and mercy with thy servants that walk before thee with all their heart:

- b) In defending and delivering His children in time of trouble.

Psalm 89:20-26

Psa 89:20 I have found David my servant; with my holy oil have I anointed him:

Psa 89:21 With whom my hand shall be established: mine arm also shall strengthen him.

Psa 89:22 The enemy shall not exact upon him; nor the son of wickedness afflict him.

Psa 89:23 And I will beat down his foes before his face, and plague them that hate him.

Psa 89:24 But my faithfulness and my mercy shall be with him: and in my name shall his horn be exalted.

Psa 89:25 I will set his hand also in the sea, and his right hand in the rivers.

Psa 89:26 He shall cry unto me, Thou art my father, my God, and the rock of my salvation.

- c) In providing a way of escape in temptation.

1 Corinthians 10:13

1 Cor There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man: but God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able; but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that ye may be able to bear it.10:13

- d) In establishing and sanctifying the believer.

2 Thessalonians 3:3

2 Th 3:3 But the Lord is faithful, who shall stablish you, and keep you from evil.

- e) In chastening His children when they go astray.

Psalm 119:75

Psa 119:75 I know, O LORD, that thy judgments are right, and that thou in faithfulness hast afflicted me.

- f) In hearing the supplications of His children.

Psalm 143:1

Psa 143:1 A Psalm of David. Hear my prayer, O LORD,
give ear to my supplications: in thy faithfulness answer me, and in thy righteousness.

IV. God the Son.

A. The title “son of God” is used in several ways.

1. Note the small “s” in the word son.

a. It is applied to Adam.

Luke 3:38

Luke Which was the son of Enos, which was the son of Seth, which was the son of Adam, which was the son of God.3:38

b. It is applied to the Hebrew nation.

Exodus 4:22

Exo And thou shalt say unto Pharaoh, Thus saith the LORD, is my son, even my firstborn:4:22

c. It is applied to certain kings of .

2 Samuel 7:11-14

2 Sam And as since the time that I commanded judges to be over my people , and have caused thee to rest from all thine enemies. Also the LORD telleth thee that he will make thee an house.7:11

2 Sam And when thy days be fulfilled, and thou shalt sleep with thy fathers, I will set up thy seed after thee, which shall proceed out of thy bowels, and I will establish his kingdom.7:12

2 Sam He shall build an house for my name, and I will stablish the throne of his kingdom for ever.7:13

2 Sam I will be his father, and he shall be my son. If he commit iniquity, I will chasten him with the rod of men, and with the stripes of the children of men:7:14

d. It is applied to all saints.

John 1:12

John But as many as received him, to them gave he power to become the sons of God, even to them that believe on his name:1:12

B. The title “Son of God” is applied to Jesus Christ as the peculiar

Son of God. Christ called Himself the Son of God..

Matthew 11:27

Mat 11:27 All things are delivered unto me of my Father: and no man knoweth the Son, but the Father; neither knoweth any man the Father, save the Son, and he to whomsoever the Son will reveal him.

1. He has oneness with God the Father.

John 10:30

John I and my Father are one.10:30

2. Both the Father and the Son have life in themselves.

John 5:26

John For as the Father hath life in himself; so hath he given to the Son to have life in himself;5:26

3. Both the Father and the Son are equal in rank.

John 5:23

John That all men should honour the Son, even as they honour the Father. He that honoureth not the Son honoureth not the Father which hath sent him.5:23

Philippians 2:6

Phil 2:6 Who, being in the form of God, thought it not robbery to be equal with God:

4. Both the Father and the Son are the same in activity.

John 3:17

John For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved.3:17

John 6:39-40

John 6:39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.

John And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.6:40

C. The Person of Jesus Christ.

1. He has divine titles associated with Him.

- a. He is called God.

John 1:1

John 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

John 20:28

Acts Take heed therefore unto yourselves, and to all the flock, over the which the Holy Ghost hath made you overseers, to feed the , which he hath purchased with his own blood.20:28 of

Romans 9:5

Rom 9:5 Whose are the fathers, and of whom as concerning the flesh Christ came, who is over all, God blessed for ever. Amen.

- b. He is called the First and the Last.

Revelation 1:17

And when I saw him, I fell at his feet as dead. And he laid his right hand upon me, saying unto me, Fear not; I am the first and the last:Rev 1:17

- c. He is called the Alpha and Omega.

Revelation 22:13

I am Alpha and Omega, the beginning and the end, the first and the last.Rev 22:13

- d. He is called the Holy One.

Acts 3:14

Acts But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you;3:14

- e. He is called Lord.

Luke 2:11

Luke For unto you is born this day in the city of David a Saviour, which is Christ the Lord.2:11

- 2. He possesses divine attributes.

- a. He is eternal.

John 8:58

John I speak that which I have seen with my Father: and ye do that which ye have seen with your father.8:38

- b. He is immutable.

Hebrews 13:8

Heb 13:8 Jesus Christ the same yesterday, and to day, and for ever.

- c. He is omnipotent.

Hebrews 1:3

Heb 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person,

and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high;

- 1) He has power over disease.

Luke 4:39

Luke And he stood over her, and rebuked the fever; and it left her: and immediately she arose and ministered unto them.4:39

- 2) He has power over death.

Luke 7:14

Luke And he came and touched the bier: and they that bare him stood still. And he said, Young man, I say unto thee, Arise.7:14

Luke 8:54

Luke And he put them all out, and took her by the hand, and called, saying, Maid, arise.8:54

- 3) He has power over natural elements.

Matthew 8:26

Mat And he saith unto them, Why are ye fearful, O ye of little faith? Then

he arose, and rebuked the winds and the sea; and there was a great calm.8:26

4) He has power over demons.

Matthew 8:16

Mat When the even was come, they brought unto him many that were possessed with devils: and he cast out the spirits with his word, and healed all that were sick:8:16

5) He is above all principality, power, might and dominion.

Ephesians 1:20-23

Eph 1:20 Which he wrought in Christ, when he raised him from the dead, and set him at his own right hand in the heavenly places,

Eph Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come:1:21

Eph And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church,1:22

Eph Which is his body, the fulness of him that filleth all in all.1:23

d. He is omniscient.

Colossians 2:3

2:3 In whom are hid all the treasures of wisdom and knowledge.

1) He knows the secret history of individuals.

John 4:16

John Jesus saith unto her, Go, call thy husband, and come hither.4:16

2) He knows the secret thoughts of men.

Luke 5:22

Luke But when Jesus perceived their thoughts, he answering said unto them, What reason ye in your hearts?5:22

3) He knows the future acts of all beings.

John 6:64

John 6:64 But there are some of you that believe not. For Jesus knew from the beginning who they were that believed not, and who should betray him.

e. He is omnipresent.

1) He was in heaven while He was on earth.

John 3:13

John 3:13 And no man hath ascended up to heaven, but he that came down from heaven, even the Son of man which is in heaven.

2) He is in every believer.

John 14:20

John At that day ye shall know that I am in my Father, and ye in me, and I in you.14:20

3) He is present with all who obey the great commission.

Matthew 28:20

Mat 28:20 Teaching them to observe all things
whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end
of the world. Amen.

4) He is present when two or three are
gathered together in His name.

Matthew 18:20

Mat For where two or three are gathered together in my name, there am I in the
midst of them.18:20

3. He performed divine works.

a. He created all things.

John 1:3

John 1:3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that
was made.

b. He preserved all things.

Hebrews 1:3

Heb 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person,
and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged
our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high;

c. He forgives sins.

Mark 2:5

Mark 2:5 When Jesus saw their faith, he said unto the sick of the palsy, Son, thy sins
be forgiven thee.

Mark 2:10-11

Mark But that ye may know that the Son of man hath power on earth to forgive sins, (he saith to the sick of the palsy,)2:10

Mark I say unto thee, Arise, and take up thy bed, and go thy way into thine house.2:11

d. He gives eternal life.

John 10:28-29

John And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand.10:28

John 10:29 My Father, which gave them me, is greater than all; and no man is able to pluck them out of my Father's hand.

e. He has power to raise the dead.

John 11:43-44

John And when he thus had spoken, he cried with a loud voice, Lazarus, come forth.11:43

John And he that was dead came forth, bound hand and foot with graveclothes: and his face was bound about with a napkin. Jesus saith unto them, Loose him, and let him go.11:44

f. He will execute judgment.

2 Timothy 4:1

2 Tim 4:1 I charge thee therefore before God, and the Lord Jesus Christ, who shall judge the quick and the dead at his appearing and his kingdom;

John 5:22

John For the Father judgeth no man, but hath committed all judgment unto the Son:5:22

Romans 2:16

Rom In the day when God shall judge the secrets of men by Jesus Christ according to my gospel.2:16

Romans 14:11-12

Rom For it is written, As I live, saith the Lord, every knee shall bow to me, and every tongue shall confess to God.14:11

Rom So then every one of us shall give account of himself to God.14:12

4. His name is coupled with the Father.

John 15:24

John If I had not done among them the works which none other man did, they had not had sin: but now have they both seen and hated both me and my Father.15:24

5. He is to be worshipped.

Matthew 14:33

Mat Then they that were in the ship came and worshipped him, saying, Of a truth thou art the Son of God.14:33

6. He is to be addressed in prayer.

1 Corinthians 1:2

1 Cor 1:2 Unto the of which is at , to them that are sanctified in Christ Jesus, called to be saints, with all that in every place call upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord, both theirs and ours:churchGod

Acts 7:59

Acts And they stoned Stephen, calling upon God, and saying, Lord Jesus, receive my spirit.7:59

- D. The subordination of the Son to the Father.

1. The intertrinitarian subordination.

- a. Christ declared that the Father was greater than He.

John 14:28

John Ye have heard how I said unto you, I go away, and come again unto you. If ye loved me, ye would rejoice, because I said, I go unto the Father: for my Father is greater than I.14:28

- b. The chief delight of Christ was to do the will of the Father.

John 4:34

John Jesus saith unto them, My meat is to do the will of him that sent me, and to finish his work.4:34

2. The economic subordination.

- a. All things were delivered to the Son.

Matthew 11:27

Mat 11:27 All things are delivered unto me of my Father: and no man knoweth the Son, but the Father; neither knoweth any man the Father, save the Son, and he to whomsoever the Son will reveal him.

- b. The Son performed the Father's work.

John 5:36

John 5:36 But I have greater witness than that of John: for the works which the Father hath given me to finish, the same works that I do, bear witness of me, that the Father hath sent me.

3. The temporary subordination.

- a. Christ came in the likeness of men.

Philippians 2:7

Phil 2:7 But made himself of no reputation, and took upon him the form of a servant, and was made in the likeness of men:

- b. Christ lived a life of poverty.

Matthew 8:20

Mat And Jesus saith unto him, The foxes have holes, and the birds of the air have nests; but the Son of man hath not where to lay his head.8:20

- c. Christ gave His life to become Savior.

1 John 4:14

1 John And we have seen and do testify that the Father sent the Son to be the Saviour of the world.4:14

- E. The entrance of the Son into humanity and His humanity.
He entered into the human race by means of the virgin birth.

Jesus was fully human and fully divine.

John 1:14

John And the Word was made flesh, and dwelt among us, (and we beheld his glory, the glory as of the only begotten of the Father,) full of grace and truth.1:14

Hebrews 10:5

Heb 10:5 Wherefore when he cometh into the world, he saith, Sacrifice and offering thou wouldest not, but a body hast thou prepared me:

Matthew 1:23

Mat Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.1:23

1. He was given human names.

1 Timothy 2:5

1 Tim 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;

2. He had human ancestry.

Luke 2:7

Luke 2:7 And she brought forth her firstborn son, and wrapped him in swaddling clothes, and laid him in a manger; because there was no room for them in the inn.

Acts 2:30

Acts 2:30 Therefore being a prophet, and knowing that God had sworn with an oath to him, that of the fruit of his loins, according to the flesh, he would raise up Christ to sit on his throne;

3. He possessed a human nature.

Hebrews 2:14

Heb 2:14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;

4. He was subject to the laws of human development.

- a. He grew.

Luke 2:40

Luke 2:40 And the child grew, and waxed strong in spirit, filled with wisdom: and the grace of God was upon him.

- b. He asked questions.

Luke 2:46

Luke 2:46 And it came to pass, that after three days they found him in the temple, sitting in the midst of the doctors, both hearing them, and asking them questions.

- c. He increased in wisdom.

Luke 2:52

Luke 52 And Jesus increased in wisdom and stature, and in favour with God and man.2

d. He learned obedience.

Hebrews 5:8

Heb 5:8 Though he were a Son, yet learned he obedience by the things which he suffered;

e. He was made perfect through suffering.

Hebrews 2:10

Heb 2:10 For it became him, for whom are all things, and by whom are all things, in bringing many sons unto glory, to make the captain of their salvation perfect through sufferings.

Note: He did not empty Himself of His divine attributes, only the independent exercise of them.

f. He exercised the active powers that belonged to humans.

1) He hungered.

Matthew 4:2

Mat 4:2 And when he had fasted forty days and forty nights, he was afterward an hungered.

2) He thirsted.

John 19:28

John After this, Jesus knowing that all things were now accomplished, that the scripture might be fulfilled, saith, I thirst. 19:28

3) He became weary.

John 4:6

John 4:6 Now Jacob's well was there. Jesus therefore, being wearied with his journey, sat thus on the well: and it was about the sixth hour.

4) He slept.

Matthew 8:24

Mat And, behold, there arose a great tempest in the sea, insomuch that the ship was covered with the waves: but he was asleep. 8:24

5) He loved.

John 13:23

John Now there was leaning on Jesus' bosom one of his disciples, whom Jesus loved. 13:23

6) He suffered and died.

John 19:30

John When Jesus therefore had received the vinegar, he said, It is finished: and he bowed his head, and gave up the ghost. 19:30

g. He still possesses a human body.

Luke 24:39

Luke 24:39 Behold my hands and my feet, that it is I myself: handle me, and see; for a spirit hath not flesh and bones, as ye see me have.

1 Timothy 2:5

1 Tim 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;

h. His virgin birth was foretold in the Old Testament and fulfilled exactly as prophesied.

Genesis 3:15

Gen And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.3:15

Isaiah 7:14

Isa Therefore the Lord himself shall give you a sign; Behold, a virgin shall conceive, and bear a son, and shall call his name Immanuel.7:14

Isaiah 9:6

Isa 9:6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

Luke 1:26-2:14

Read these verses from the Bible.

F. The character of Jesus.

1. His holiness.

Acts 3:14

Acts But ye denied the Holy One and the Just, and desired a murderer to be granted unto you;3:14

2. His love.

a. Love for the Father.

John 14:31

John But that the world may know that I love the Father; and as the Father gave me commandment, even so I do. Arise, let us go hence.14:31

- b. Love for men.

Ephesians 5:2

Eph 5:2 And walk in love, as Christ also hath loved us, and hath given himself for us an offering and a sacrifice to God for a sweetsmelling savour.

- 3. His compassion.

Mark 6:34

Mark And Jesus, when he came out, saw much people, and was moved with compassion toward them, because they were as sheep not having a shepherd: and he began to teach them many things.6:34

- 4. His prayerfulness.

- a. He prayed while being baptized.

Luke 3:21-22

Luke Now when all the people were baptized, it came to pass, that Jesus also being baptized, and praying, the heaven was opened,3:21

Luke 3:22 And the Holy Ghost descended in a bodily shape like a dove upon him, and a voice came from heaven, which said, Thou art my beloved Son; in thee I am well pleased.

- b. He prayed in the night.

Luke 6:12

Luke And it came to pass in those days, that he went out into a mountain to pray, and continued all night in prayer to God.6:12

- c. He prayed in the early morning.

Mark 1:35

Mark And in the morning, rising up a great while before day, he went out, and departed into a solitary place, and there prayed.1:35

- d. He prayed before eating.

Luke 24:30

Luke 24:30 And it came to pass, as he sat at meat with them, he took bread, and blessed it, and brake, and gave to them.

- e. He prayed before entering on a preaching tour.

Matthew 14:22-23

Mat And straightway Jesus constrained his disciples to get into a ship, and to go before him unto the other side, while he sent the multitudes away.14:22

Mat And when he had sent the multitudes away, he went up into a mountain apart to pray: and when the evening was come, he was there alone.14:23

- f. He prayed when unusually busy.

Luke 5:15-16

Luke But so much the more went there a fame abroad of him: and great multitudes came together to hear, and to be healed by him of their infirmities.5:15

Luke And he withdrew himself into the wilderness, and prayed.5:16

- g. He taught others how to pray.

- 1) In the Father's will. (as in)Gethsemane

Mat 26:36 Then cometh Jesus with them unto a place called , and saith unto the disciples, Sit ye here, while I go and pray yonder.Gethsemane

- 2) Upon His face.

Matthew 26:39

Mat 26:39 And he went a little farther, and fell on his face, and prayed, saying, O my Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me: nevertheless not as I will, but as thou wilt.

- G. The death of Jesus (the importance of it).

- 1. The meaning of the death of Christ.

- a. His death was vicarious . Vicarious suffering is suffering endured by one person in the place of another.

1 Corinthians 15:3

1 Cor 15:3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

Romans 5:8

Rom 5:8 But God commendeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

2 Corinthians 5:21

2 Cor For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.5:21

Isaiah 53:5-6

Isa 53:5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

Isa 53:6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

b. His death was satisfaction to the Father.

1. It satisfied the justice of God.

Romans 5:15-21

Rom But not as the offence, so also is the free gift. For if through the offence of one many be dead, much more the grace of God, and the gift by grace, which is by one man, Jesus Christ, hath abounded unto many.5:15

Rom And not as it was by one that sinned, so is the gift: for the judgment was by one to condemnation, but the free gift is of many offences unto justification.5:16

Rom For if by one man's offence death reigned by one; much more they which receive abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness shall reign in life by one, Jesus Christ.)5:17

Rom Therefore as by the offence of one judgment came upon all men to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one the free gift came upon all men unto justification of life.5:18

Rom For as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall many be made righteous.5:19

Rom Moreover the law entered, that the offence might abound. But where sin abounded, grace did much more abound:5:20

Rom That as sin hath reigned unto death, even so might grace reign through righteousness unto eternal life by Jesus Christ our Lord.5:21

2. It satisfied the law of God.

Ezekiel 18:4

Ezek 18:4 Behold, all souls are mine; as the soul of the father, so also the soul of the son is mine: the soul that sinneth, it shall die.

3. It satisfies as to the basis of atonement.
Atonement means to cover over so as not to be seen.

Romans 5:11

Rom And not only so, but we also joy in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom we have now received the atonement.5:11

Psalm 51:9

Psa 51:9 Hide thy face from my sins, and blot out all mine iniquities.

4. It satisfies as to the cost of propitiation.
Propitiation is the price paid to ransom.

1 John 2:2

1 John 2:2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world.

Romans 3:25

Rom Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;3:25

- a) Propitiation is the cause of the death of Christ.
- b) Reconciliation is the effect of the death of Christ.
- 5. It satisfies the requirement for reconciliation.

Romans 5:10

Rom For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.5:10

2 Corinthians 5:18-19

2 Cor And all things are of God, who hath reconciled us to himself by Jesus Christ, and hath given to us the ministry of reconciliation;5:18

2 Cor 5:19 To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation.

Ephesians 2:16

Eph And that he might reconcile both unto God in one body by the cross, having slain the enmity thereby:2:16

- c. His death was the ransom paid for sin. The ransom price was paid to God, not to Satan.

1 Timothy 2:6

1 Tim 2:6 Who gave himself a ransom for all, to be testified in due time.

2. The death of Christ is very important in the Scriptures.

- a. The death of Christ is very prominent in the Scriptures. There are 175 references in the New Testament alone.

- b. The death of Christ was the purpose of His incarnation.

Hebrews 2:14

Heb 2:14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;

- c. The death of Christ was discussed on the Mount of Transfiguration.

Matthew 16:21

Mat From that time forth began Jesus to show unto his disciples, how that he must go unto , and suffer many things of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day.16:21

- d. The death of Christ was a subject of deep interest to angels.

1 Peter 1:12

1 Pet 1:12 Unto whom it was revealed, that not unto themselves, but unto us they did minister the things, which are now reported unto you by them that have preached the gospel unto you

with the Holy Ghost sent down from heaven; which things the angels desire to look into.

- e. The death of Christ was that He might pay the price for sin.

Isaiah 53:5-6

Isa 53:5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

Isa 53:6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

- f. The death of Christ was the price necessary to redeem man.

Matthew 20:28

Mat Even as the Son of man came not to be ministered unto, but to minister, and to give his life a ransom for many.20:28

3. Erroneous theories concerning the death of Christ.

- a. The accident theory.

- 1) This theory sees no significance in the death of Christ.
- 2) This theory says since Jesus was a man, he was subject to death like all other men.
- 3) The Old Testament prophecies show His death to be no accident.

Genesis 3:15

Gen And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.3:15

Isaiah 53:6-10

Isa 53:6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

Isa 53:7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.

Isa 53:8 He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken.

Isa 53:9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no violence, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

Isa 53:10 Yet it pleased the LORD to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the LORD shall prosper in his hand.

b. The martyr theory.

- 1) This theory holds that the death of Christ was that of a martyr.
- 2) This theory teaches that Christ was killed because He was faithful to His principles, by a generation which did not agree with Him.
- 3) This theory holds that we can learn

fidelity to truth and duty from Him but ignores the fundamental idea of atonement.

4) This theory says there is no saving benefit to the death of Christ.

c. The moral influence theory also known as the love of God theory.

1) This theory holds His death was a natural result of His taking human form, that it was an expression of God's love to man.

2) This theory likens the sufferings and death of Christ to a missionary entering a leper' colony for life, in order to save the lepers.

d. The governmental theory.

1) This theory holds that God, in order to maintain respect for His law, made an example of His hatred of sin in the death of Christ.

2) This theory ignores the redemptive and substitutionary aspects of the death of Christ.

Note: All four theories deny the atoning and redemptive fact of Christ's death.

H. The resurrection of Jesus.

1. Note some infidel theories.

a. The fraud theory says His resurrection was fabricated by His disciples.

b. The swoon theory says He merely fainted while on the cross.

c. The myth theory says His resurrection is just a

myth.

- d. The vision theory says Mary and others who professed to see Him alive only had a vision.
- e. The spirit theory says He did not actually rise and that was seen was merely a spirit.

2. Evidences of Christ's resurrection.

- a. The testimony of creditable writers.
- b. Circumstantial evidences.
 - 1) It was the foundation of early preaching.
 - 2) It was not challenged in the first century.
 - 3) It transformed the lives of the apostles.
- c. Christ was seen by many.

1 Corinthians 15:5-6

1 Cor 15:5 And that he was seen of Cephas, then of the twelve:

1 Cor 15:6 After that, he was seen of above five hundred brethren at once; of whom the greater part remain unto this present, but some are fallen asleep.

3. Results of Christ's resurrection.

- a. It gives assurance of God's acceptance of Christ's sacrifice.

Romans 4:21-25

Rom And being fully persuaded that, what he had promised, he was able also to perform.4:21

Rom And therefore it was imputed to him for righteousness.4:22

Rom Now it was not written for his sake alone, that it was imputed to him;4:23

Rom But for us also, to whom it shall be imputed, if we believe on him that raised up Jesus our Lord from the dead;4:24

Rom Who was delivered for our offences, and was raised again for our justification. 4:25

b. It gives the believer an High Priest sitting at the right hand of God.

Romans 8:34

Rom Who is he that condemneth? It is Christ that died, yea rather, that is risen again, who is even at the right hand of God, who also maketh intercession for us.8:34

c. It guarantees the resurrection of the believer.

1 Corinthians 15:22

1 Cor For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.15:22

d. It makes the coming judgment sure.

Acts 17:31

Acts 17:31 Because he hath appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he hath ordained; whereof he hath given assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised him from the dead.

I. The exaltation of Jesus.

Philippians 2:9-11

Phil 2:9 Wherefore God also hath highly exalted him, and given him a name which is above every name:

Phil That at the name of Jesus every knee should bow,
of things in heaven, and things in earth, and things under the earth;2:10

Phil And that every tongue should confess that Jesus Christ is Lord, to the glory of
God the Father.2:11

1. The proof of Christ's ascension.

Luke 24:50-53

Luke 24:50 And he led them out as far as to , and he lifted up his hands, and blessed
them.

Luke 24:51 And it came to pass, while he blessed them, he was parted from them,
and carried up into heaven.

Luke 24:52 And they worshipped him, and returned to with great joy:

Luke 24:53 And were continually in the temple, praising and blessing God. Amen.

2. The purpose for Christ's ascension.

a. To be the forerunner of the believer.

Hebrews 6:18-20

Heb 6:18 That by two immutable things, in which it was impossible for God to lie,
we might have a strong consolation, who have fled for refuge to lay hold upon the
hope set before us:

Heb Which hope we have as an anchor of the soul, both sure and stedfast, and
which entereth into that within the veil;6:19

Heb 6:20 Whither the forerunner is for us entered, even Jesus, made an high priest
for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

b. To prepare a place for the believer.

John 14:2

John 14:2 In my Father's house are many mansions: if it were not so, I would have
told you. I go to prepare a place for you.

c. To appear before God on behalf of the believer.

1 John 2:1

1 John 2:1 My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if
any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous:

V. God the Holy Spirit.

A. The names of the Holy Spirit.

Numerous titles are given to the Holy Spirit in the Scriptures. These names reveal two things about Him. They reveal the complexity of His nature and the varieties of His activities.

1. The Spirit. This word is used since the word “pneuma” (translated spirit) means the out breathing or the going forth of the life of God.

1 Corinthians 2:10-13

1 Cor But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.2:10

1 Cor For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God.2:11

1 Cor Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God.2:12

1 Cor Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual.2:13

2. The Spirit of God.

1 Corinthians 3:16

1 Cor Know ye not that ye are the , and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?3:16
of

3. The Spirit of the Lord.

Isaiah 11:2

Isa 11:2 And the spirit of the LORD shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the LORD;

4. The Spirit of the Lord God.

Isaiah 61:1

Isa 61:1 The spirit of the Lord GOD is upon me; because the LORD hath anointed me to preach good tidings unto the meek; he hath sent me to bind up the brokenhearted, to proclaim liberty to the captives, and the opening of the prison to them that are bound;

5. The Spirit of the living God.

2 Corinthians 3:2-3

2 Cor 3:2 Ye are our epistle written in our hearts, known and read of all men:

2 Cor 3:3 Forasmuch as ye are manifestly declared to be the epistle of Christ ministered by us, written not with ink, but with the Spirit of the living God; not in tables of stone, but in fleshly tables of the heart.

6. The Spirit of Christ.

Romans 8:9

Rom 8:9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.

7. The Holy Spirit.

Luke 11:13

Luke 11:13 If ye then, being evil, know how to give good gifts unto your children: how much more shall your heavenly Father give the Holy Spirit to them that ask him?

8. The Holy Ghost.

Acts 1:8

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in , and in all Judaea, and in , and unto the uttermost part of the earth. Jerusalem

9. The eternal Spirit.

Hebrews 9:14

Heb 9:14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

10. The Spirit of burning.

Isaiah 4:4

Isa 4:4 When the Lord shall have washed away the filth of the daughters of , and shall have purged the blood of from the midst thereof by the spirit of judgment, and by the spirit of burning. Zion

Note: The spirit of burning is a reference to the severity with which the Holy Spirit may work. He may at times be brutish in His

dealing in judgment. He may set a person or thing at waste as though setting on fire the person or thing. He will not always strive with man but will act in judgment when He has been grieved, vexed, displeased long enough. The word burning may also allude to the fiery indignation with which the Holy Spirit may use in opposition to those sinning against God.

11. The Spirit of Truth.

John 16:13

John Howbeit when he, the Spirit of truth, is come, he will guide you into all truth: for he shall not speak of himself; but whatsoever he shall hear, that shall he speak: and he will show you things to come. 16:13

12. The Spirit of grace.

Hebrews 10:29

Heb 10:29 Of how much sorer punishment, suppose ye, shall he be thought worthy, who hath trodden under foot the Son of God, and hath counted the blood of the covenant, wherewith he was sanctified, an unholy thing, and hath done despite unto the Spirit of grace?

13. The Comforter or the One who goes along with or accompanies.

John 14:26

John 14:26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

B. The personality of the Holy Spirit.

There are four things which attest to the Personhood and individual identity of the Holy Spirit.

1. He is referred to in terms which designate personality.

a. Personal pronouns are used to identify Him.

John 16:14

John He shall glorify me: for he shall receive of mine, and shall show it unto you. 16:14

John 15:26

John But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me:15:26

- b. He is called the comforter.

John 15:26

John But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me:15:26

- 2. His name appears with that of other persons.

- a. His name appears with Christians.

Acts 15:28

Acts For it seemed good to the Holy Ghost, and to us, to lay upon you no greater burden than these necessary things;15:28

- b. His name appears with Jesus Christ.

John 16:14

John He shall glorify me: for he shall receive of mine, and shall show it unto you.16:14

- c. His name appears with God the Father and the Son.

Matthew 28:19-20

Mat 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

Mat 28:20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

- 3. He performs acts which show Him to be a personality.

- a. He convicts men of sin.

John 16:8

John 16:8 And when he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment:

- b. He speaks.

Acts 8:29

Acts Then the Spirit said unto Philip, Go near, and join thyself to this chariot.8:29

Acts 13:2

Acts 13:2 As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them.

Acts 16:6-7

Acts 16:6 Now when they had gone throughout Phrygia and the region of , and were forbidden of the Holy Ghost to preach the word in ,GalatiaAsia

Acts 16:7 After they were come to Mysia, they assayed to go into : but the Spirit suffered them not.

c. He searcheth all things.

1 Corinthians 1:10-11

1 Cor But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.2:10

1 Cor For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God.2:11

d. He raised Christ from the dead.

Romans 8:11

Rom 8:11 But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you.

e. He makes intercession.

The Holy Spirit prays for the believer. He does not rephrase or change the believer's prayer.

Romans 8:26

Rom Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered.8:26

f. He teaches.

John 14:26

John 14:26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

g. He leads.

Romans 8:14

Rom For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.8:14

h. He calls and commissions.

Acts 13:2

Acts 13:2 As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them.

4. He is affected by the actions of others.

a. He can be vexed (annoyed, irritated, disturbed, troubled).

Isaiah 63:10

Isa 63:10 But they rebelled, and vexed his holy Spirit: therefore he was turned to be their enemy, and he fought against them.

b. He can be blasphemed (insulted, shown contempt, shown lack of reverence, lied against).

Matthew 12:31

Mat Wherefore I say unto you, All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men: but the blasphemy against the Holy Ghost shall not be forgiven unto men. 12:31

c. He can be lied to.

Acts 5:3-4, 9

Acts 5:3 But Peter said, Ananias, why hath Satan filled thine heart to lie to the Holy Ghost, and to keep back part of the price of the land?

Acts 5:4 Whiles it remained, was it not thine own? and after it was sold, was it not in thine own power? why hast thou conceived this thing in thine heart? thou hast not lied unto men, but unto God.

Acts 5:9 Then Peter said unto her, How is it that ye have agreed together to tempt the Spirit of the Lord? behold, the feet of them which have buried thy husband are at the door, and shall carry thee out.

d. He can be grieved (distressed, made sorrowful, inflicted and made to bear significant pain).

Ephesians 4:30

Eph And grieve not the holy Spirit of God, whereby ye are sealed unto the day of redemption.4:30

C. The deity of the Holy Spirit.

He manifests Himself in visible form separate from that of the Father and the Son.

Matthew 3:16

Mat 3:16 And Jesus, when he was baptized, went up straightway out of the water: and, lo, the heavens were opened unto him, and he saw the Spirit of God descending like a dove, and lighting upon him:

1. Divine names are given to Him.

a. He is called God.

1 Corinthians 3:16

1 Cor Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?3:16 of

1 Corinthians 6:19

1 Cor What? know ye not that your body is the temple of the Holy Ghost which is in you, which ye have of God, and ye are not your own?6:19

b. He is called Lord.

1 Corinthians 12:4-6

1 Cor 12:4 Now there are diversities of gifts, but the same Spirit.

1 Cor 12:5 And there are differences of administrations, but the same Lord.

1 Cor 12:6 And there are diversities of operations, but it is the same God which worketh all in all.

2. Divine attributes are ascribed to Him.

There is a difference in eternal and everlasting. Eternal has neither a beginning nor an ending. Everlasting has a beginning but no ending.

a. He is eternal.

Hebrews 9:14

Heb 9:14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

b. He is omnipresent.

Psalm 139:7-10

Psa 139:7 Whither shall I go from thy spirit? or whither shall I flee from thy presence?

Psa 139:8 If I ascend up into heaven, thou art there: if I make my bed in hell, behold, thou art there.

Psa 139:9 If I take the wings of the morning, and dwell in the uttermost parts of the sea;

Psa 139:10 Even there shall thy hand lead me, and thy right hand shall hold me.

c. He is omniscient.

1 Corinthians 2:10-11

1 Cor But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.2:10

1 Cor For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God.2:11

3. His divine works attest to His deity.

a. He was active in creation.

Genesis 1:2

Gen 1:2 And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.

Job 33:4

Job 33:4 The spirit of God hath made me, and the breath of the Almighty hath given me life.

Psalms 104:30

Psa 104:30 Thou sendest forth thy spirit, they are created: and thou renewest the face of the earth.

b. He cast out demons.

Matthew 12:28

Mat But if I cast out devils by the Spirit of God, then the is come unto you.12:28 of

c. He convicts of sin.

John 16:8

John 16:8 And when he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment:

d. He regenerates sinners.

John 3:5-6

John 3:5 Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.

John 3:6 That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit.

4. His ability to raise Christ from the dead attests to His deity.

Romans 8:11

Rom 8:11 But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you.

5. His name is placed on equality with that of the Father and the Son.

a. The Holy Spirit is included in the great commission.

Matthew 28:19

Mat 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

b. The Holy Spirit is included in the apostolic benediction.

2 Corinthians 13:14

2 Cor The grace of the Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the communion of the Holy Ghost, be with you all. Amen. 13:14

D. The work of the Holy Spirit.

1. His work in the universe.

a. He was active in creation.

Job 33:4

Job 33:4 The spirit of God hath made me, and the breath of the Almighty hath given me life.

Psalm 33:6

Psa 33:6 By the word of the LORD were the heavens made; and all the host of them by the breath of his mouth.

b. He gave shape and form to the universe in the re-creation.

Genesis 1:2

Gen 1:2 And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.

Job 26:13

Job 26:13 By his spirit he hath garnished the heavens; his hand hath formed the crooked serpent.

Psalms 104:29-30

Psa 104:29 Thou hidest thy face, they are troubled: thou takest away their breath, they die, and return to their dust.

Psa 104:30 Thou sendest forth thy spirit, they are created: and thou renewest the face of the earth.

2. His work relative to Jesus Christ.

a. Jesus was begotten by the Holy Spirit.

Luke 1:35

Luke 1:35 And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee,

and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee:
therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.

Matthew 1:18-21

Mat Now the birth of Jesus Christ was on this wise: When as his mother Mary was espoused to Joseph, before they came together, she was found with child of the Holy Ghost.1:18

Mat Then Joseph her husband, being a just man, and not willing to make her a public example, was minded to put her away privily.1:19

Mat But while he thought on these things, behold, the angel of the Lord appeared unto him in a dream, saying, Joseph, thou son of David, fear not to take unto thee Mary thy wife: for that which is conceived in her is of the Holy Ghost.1:20

Mat And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name JESUS: for he shall save his people from their sins.1:21

b. Jesus was anointed for service by the Holy Spirit.

Luke 4:13-19

Luke And when the devil had ended all the temptation, he departed from him for a season.4:13

Luke And Jesus returned in the power of the Spirit into : and there went out a fame of him through all the region round about.4:14Galilee

Luke And he taught in their synagogues, being glorified of all.4:15

Luke And he came to , where he had been brought up: and, as his custom was, he went into the synagogue on the sabbath day, and stood up for to read.4:16

Luke And there was delivered unto him the book of the prophet Esaias. And when he had opened the book, he found the place where it was written,4:17

Luke 4:18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind, to set at liberty them that are bruised,

Luke 4:19 To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.

c. Jesus was led by the Holy Spirit.

Luke 4:1

Luke 4:1 And Jesus being full of the Holy Ghost returned from , and was led by the Spirit into the wilderness,

d. Jesus was endued with wisdom by the Holy Spirit.

Isaiah 11:2

Isa 11:2 And the spirit of the LORD shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the LORD;

e. Jesus gave commandments to the twelve apostles by the Holy Spirit.

Acts 16:6

Acts 16:6 Now when they had gone throughout Phrygia and the region of , and were forbidden of the Holy Ghost to preach the word in ,GalatiaAsia

f. Jesus led a spotless life and offered Himself to God through the Spirit.

Hebrews 9:14

Heb 9:14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

g. Jesus cast out devils by the Holy Spirit.

Matthew 12:28

Mat But if I cast out devils by the Spirit of God, then the is come unto you.12:28 of

3. His work in the human race.
- a. He strives (contend with, devote serious effort or energy) with men.

Genesis 6:3

Gen 6:3 And the LORD said, My spirit shall not always strive with man, for that he also is flesh: yet his days shall be an hundred and twenty years.

- b. He witnesses to men concerning Jesus.

John 15:26-27

John But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me:15:26

John And ye also shall bear witness, because ye have been with me from the beginning.15:27

- c. He convicts men.

John 16:8-11

1. He convicts men of sin.

Acts 2:36-37

Acts 2:36 Therefore let all the house of know assuredly, that God hath made that same Jesus, whom ye have crucified, both Lord and Christ.

Acts 2:37 Now when they heard this, they were pricked in their heart, and said unto Peter and to the rest of the apostles, Men and brethren, what shall we do?

2. He convicts men of righteousness.

Acts 26:14

Acts 26:14 And when we were all fallen to the earth, I heard a voice speaking unto me, and saying in the Hebrew tongue, Saul, Saul, why persecutest thou me? it is hard for thee to kick against the pricks.

Acts 26:15 And I said, Who art thou, Lord? And he said, I am Jesus whom thou persecutest.

3. He convicts men of judgment.

John 16:8-11

John 16:8 And when he is come, he will reprove the world of sin, and of righteousness, and of judgment:

John 16:9 Of sin, because they believe not on me;

John Of righteousness, because I go to my Father, and ye see me no more;16:10

John Of judgment, because the prince of this world is judged.16:11

4. His work in the church.

a. He abides in the church.

John 14:16-17

John And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that he may abide with you for ever;14:16

John Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall be in you.14:17

Ephesians 2:21-22

Eph In whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto an holy temple in the Lord:2:21

Eph In whom ye also are builded together for an habitation of God through the Spirit.2:22

b. He builds up the church.

1 Peter 2:5-6

1 Pet 2:5 Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.

1 Pet 2:6 Wherefore also it is contained in the scripture, Behold, I lay in Sion a chief corner stone, elect, precious: and he that believeth on him shall not be confounded.

c. He administers the affairs of the church.

1) He inspires worship.

Philippians 3:3

Phil 3:3 For we are the circumcision, which worship God in the spirit, and

rejoice in Christ Jesus, and have no confidence in the flesh.

2) He gives power to the church as the witnesses of Christ.

Acts 1:8

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in , and in all Judaea, and in , and unto the uttermost part of the earth. Jerusalem

3) He directs the missionary work of the church.

Acts 8:29

Acts Then the Spirit said unto Philip, Go near, and join thyself to this chariot. 8:29

Acts 13:2

Acts 13:2 As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them.

4) He unifies the church.

Philippians 2:2-4

Phil 2:2 Fulfil ye my joy, that ye be likeminded, having the same love, being of one accord, of one mind.

Phil 2:3 Let nothing be done through strife or vainglory; but in lowliness of mind let each esteem other better than themselves.

Phil 2:4 Look not every man on his own things, but every man also on the things of others.

5. His work in the believer.

a. He produces a witness within the believer.

Romans 8:16

Rom The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God:8:16

b. He dwells within the believer.

1 Corinthians 3:16

1 Cor 3:16 Know ye not that ye are the , and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you? o
f

c. He becomes the source of personal satisfaction to the believer.

John 4:14

John 4:14 But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life.

d. He strengthens the believer with power in the inner man.

Ephesians 3:16

Eph 3:16 That he would grant you, according to the riches of his glory, to be strengthened with might by his Spirit in the inner man;

e. He leads believers into a holy life.

Romans 8:14

Rom For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.8:14

f. He seals the believer.

Ephesians 4:30

Eph And grieve not the holy Spirit of God, whereby ye are sealed unto the day of redemption.4:30

- 1) His sealing is the sign of ownership.

2 Corinthians 1:22

2 Cor Who hath also sealed us, and given the earnest of the Spirit in our hearts.1:22

- 2) His sealing is the guarantee of a completed transaction.

Ephesians 1:13-14

Eph In whom ye also trusted, after that ye heard the word of truth, the gospel of your salvation: in whom also after that ye believed, ye were sealed with that holy Spirit of promise,1:13

Eph Which is the earnest of our inheritance until the redemption of the purchased possession, unto the praise of his glory.1:14

- 3) His sealing is the assurance that the believer is God's property forever.

Romans 8:9

Rom 8:9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.

- g. He produces fruit (not fruits) in the believers life.

Galatians 5:22-25

Gal 5:22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith,

Gal Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law.5:23

Gal And they that are Christ's have crucified the flesh with the affections and lusts.5:24

Gal If we live in the Spirit, let us also walk in the Spirit.5:25

- h. He brings to remembrance the words of Christ.

John 14:26

John 14:26 But the Comforter, which is the Holy Ghost, whom the Father will send in my name, he shall teach you all things, and bring all things to your remembrance, whatsoever I have said unto you.

- i. He reveals the deep things of the Word of God.

1 Corinthians 2:9-14

1 Cor 2:9 But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him.

1 Cor But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.2:10

1 Cor For what man knoweth the things of a man, save the spirit of man which is in him? even so the things of God knoweth no man, but the Spirit of God.2:11

1 Cor Now we have received, not the spirit of the world, but the spirit which is of God; that we might know the things that are freely given to us of God.2:12

1 Cor Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual.2:13

1 Cor But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.2:14

j. He enables the believer to communicate (with power) the Word of God.

1 Corinthians 2:1-5

1 Cor 2:1 And I, brethren, when I came to you, came not with excellency of speech or of wisdom, declaring unto you the testimony of God.

1 Cor 2:2 For I determined not to know any thing among you, save Jesus Christ, and him crucified.

1 Cor 2:3 And I was with you in weakness, and in fear, and in much trembling.

1 Cor 2:4 And my speech and my preaching was not with enticing words of man's wisdom, but in demonstration of the Spirit and of power:

1 Cor 2:5 That your faith should not stand in the wisdom of men, but in the power of God.

k. He directs the believer in prayer.

Jude 20

Jude But ye, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost,1:20

Ephesians 6:18

Eph Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching

thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;6:18

Romans 8:26

Rom Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered.8:26

l. He inspires worship on the part of the believer.

John 4:23-24

John But the hour cometh, and now is, when the true worshippers shall worship the Father in spirit and in truth: for the Father seeketh such to worship him.4:23

John God is a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth.4:24

m. He calls men and sends them forth into definite work.

Acts 13:2-4

Acts 13:2 As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them.

Acts 13:3 And when they had fasted and prayed, and laid their hands on them, they sent them away.

Acts 13:4 So they, being sent forth by the Holy Ghost, departed unto ; and from thence they sailed to .Seleucia

n. He guides believers as to where to go and where not to go.

Acts 8:27-29

Acts 8:27 And he arose and went: and, behold, a man of Ethiopia, an eunuch of great authority under Candace queen of the Ethiopians, who had the charge of all her treasure, and had come to Jerusalem for to worship,

Acts Was returning, and sitting in his chariot read Esaias the prophet.8:28

Acts Then the Spirit said unto Philip, Go near, and join thyself to this chariot.8:29

o. He empowers for special service.

1) Instances in the Old Testament.

a) Joseph.

Genesis 41:38

Gen 41:38 And Pharaoh said unto his servants, Can we find such a one as this is, a man in whom the Spirit of God is?

b) Bezaleel.

Exodus 31:2-4

Exo 31:2 See, I have called by name Bezaleel the son of Uri, the son of Hur, of the tribe of :

Exo 31:3 And I have filled him with the spirit of God, in wisdom, and in understanding, and in knowledge, and in all manner of workmanship,

Exo 31:4 To devise cunning works, to work in gold, and in silver, and in brass,

c) The makers of Aaron's garments.

Exodus 28:3

Exo 28:3 And thou shalt speak unto all that are wise hearted, whom I have filled with the spirit of wisdom, that they may make Aaron's garments to consecrate him, that he may minister unto me in the priest's office.

d) Joshua.

Numbers 27:18-20

Num 27:18 And the LORD said unto Moses, Take thee Joshua the son of Nun, a man in whom is the spirit, and lay thine hand upon him;

Num 27:19 And set him before Eleazar the priest, and before all the congregation; and give him a charge in their sight.

Num 27:20 And thou shalt put some of thine honour upon him, that all the congregation of the children of may be obedient.

e) Gideon.

Judges 6:34

Judg But the spirit of the LORD came upon Gideon, and he blew a trumpet; and Abi ezer was gathered after him.6:34

f) David.

1 Samuel 16:12-13

1 Sam And he sent, and brought him in. Now he was ruddy, and withal of a beautiful

countenance, and goodly to look to. And the LORD said, Arise, anoint him: for this is he.16:12

1 Sam Then Samuel took the horn of oil, and anointed him in the midst of his brethren: and the spirit of the LORD came upon David from that day forward. So Samuel rose up, and went to Ramah.16:13

g) Ezekiel.

Ezekiel 2:2-3

Ezek 12:2 Son of man, thou dwellest in the midst of a rebellious house, which have eyes to see, and see not; they have ears to hear, and hear not: for they are a rebellious house.

Ezek 12:3 Therefore, thou son of man, prepare thee stuff for removing, and remove by day in their sight; and thou shalt remove from thy place to another place in their sight: it may be they will consider, though they be a rebellious house.

2) Instances in the New Testament.

a) Jesus.

Luke 4:18-19

Luke 4:18 The Spirit of the Lord is upon me, because he hath anointed me to preach the gospel to the poor; he hath sent me to heal the brokenhearted, to preach deliverance to the captives, and recovering of sight to the blind,

to set at liberty them that are bruised,

Luke To preach the acceptable year of the Lord.4:19

b) Believers.

1 John 2:20-27

1 John 2:20 But ye have an unction from the Holy One, and ye know all things.

1 John I have not written unto you because ye know not the truth, but because ye know it, and that no lie is of the truth.2:21

1 John Who is a liar but he that denieth that Jesus is the Christ? He is antichrist, that denieth the Father and the Son.2:22

1 John Whosoever denieth the Son, the same hath not the Father: (but) he that acknowledgeth the Son hath the Father also.2:23

1 John Let that therefore abide in you, which ye have heard from the beginning. If that which ye have heard from the beginning shall remain in you, ye also shall continue in the Son, and in the Father.2:24

1 John And this is the promise that he hath promised us, even eternal life.2:25

1 John These things have I written unto you concerning them that seduce you.2:26

1 John 2:27 But the anointing which ye have received of him abideth in you, and ye need not that any man teach you: but as the same anointing teacheth you of all things, and is truth, and is no lie, and even as it hath taught you, ye shall abide in him.

c) He fills the believer for special service.

Ephesians 5:18

Eph 5:18 And be not drunk with wine, wherein is excess; but be filled with the Spirit;

6. His work in divine revelation.

a. He is the author of the Holy Scriptures.

2 Peter 1:21

2 Pet 1:21 For the prophecy came not in old time by the will of man: but holy men of God spake as they were moved by the Holy Ghost.

2 Timothy 3:16

2 Pet 3:16 As also in all his epistles, speaking in them of these things; in which are some things hard to be understood, which they that are unlearned and unstable wrest, as they do also the other scriptures, unto their own destruction.

b. He revealed truth hidden in other ages.

He revealed the truth that the church would include both Jew and Gentile.

1 Corinthians 2:6-10

1 Cor 2:6 Howbeit we speak wisdom among them that are perfect: yet not the wisdom of this world, nor of the princes of this world, that come to nought:

1 Cor 2:7 But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, even the hidden wisdom, which God ordained before the world unto our glory:

1 Cor 2:8 Which none of the princes of this world knew: for had they known it, they would not have crucified the Lord of glory.

1 Cor 2:9 But as it is written, Eye hath not seen, nor ear heard, neither have entered into the heart of man, the things which God hath prepared for them that love him.

1 Cor But God hath revealed them unto us by his Spirit: for the Spirit searcheth all things, yea, the deep things of God.2:10

Ephesians 3:2-3

Eph 3:2 If ye have heard of the dispensation of the grace of God which is given me to you-ward:

Eph 3:3 How that by revelation he made known unto me the mystery; (as I wrote afore in few words,

c. He interprets the Scriptures.

1 Corinthians 2:13-14

1 Cor Which things also we speak, not in the words which man's wisdom teacheth, but which the Holy Ghost teacheth; comparing spiritual things with spiritual.2:13

1 Cor But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually discerned.2:14

VI. The determinate counsel of God.

The determinate counsel of God is also referred to as God's purposes, the decrees of God or those things which God has decided will happen.

A. The fact of His counsel.

1. The deliverance of Jesus to be crucified was in fulfillment of divine determination.

Acts 2:23

Acts Him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, ye have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain:2:23

Revelation 13:8

Rev 13:8 And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.

2. Peter included "foreknowledge" with "determinate counsel in the book of Acts.

Acts 2:23

Acts Him, being delivered by the determinate counsel and foreknowledge of God, ye have taken, and by wicked hands have crucified and slain:2:23

3. The purpose of God is unalterable by any possible contingency.

Isaiah 14:26-27

Isa This is the purpose that is purposed upon the whole earth: and this is the hand that is stretched out upon all the nations.14:26

Isa For the LORD of hosts hath purposed, and who shall disannul it? and his hand is stretched out, and who shall turn it back?14:27

- a. In these verses judgment upon the Assyrians is stated as the fulfillment of the divine purpose.

- b. The execution of the divine purpose is absolutely certain because the One decreeing it has the power to bring it to pass.

Isaiah 46:10-11

Isa 46:10 Declaring the end from the beginning, and from ancient times the things that are not yet done, saying, My counsel shall stand, and I will do all my pleasure:

Isa 46:11 Calling a ravenous bird from the east, the man that executeth my counsel from a far country: yea, I have spoken it, I will also bring it to pass; I have purposed it, I will also do it.

Ephesians 1:11

Eph In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestinated according to the purpose of him who worketh all things after the counsel of his own will:1:11

B. The distinguishing characteristics of the divine counsel.

1. Divine counsel is rational.

God can do nothing wrong.

Ephesians 1:11

Eph In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestinated according to the purpose of him who worketh all things after the counsel of his own will:1:11

a. All things in His purpose are grounded in infinite wisdom.

b. All things are on the basis of perfect knowledge.

c. The Judge of the earth can not fail to do right.

Genesis 18:25

Gen That be far from thee to do after this manner, to slay the righteous with the wicked: and that the righteous should be as the wicked, that be far from thee: Shall not the Judge of all the earth do right?18:25

2. Divine counsel is eternal.

Acts 15:18

Acts Known unto God are all his works from the beginning of the world.15:18

a. That which is taking place in the world was known from the beginning.

b. God knows and plans for the reception of certain ones.

Matthew 25:34

Mat 25:34 Then shall the King say unto them on his right hand, Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world:

c. The believer was chosen in Christ before the believer even existed.

Ephesians 1:4

Eph 1:4 According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love:

d. Certain ones are included in the determinate counsel. Paul saw this happening.

1 Thessalonians 2:13

1 Th 2:13 For this cause also thank we God without ceasing, because, when ye received the word of God which ye heard of us, ye received it not as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God, which effectually worketh also in you that believe.

e. The believer is called and saved according to the divine purpose and grace given in Christ Jesus before the world came into existence.

3. Divine counsel is universal.

It includes whatever comes to pass, be it spiritual or physical, good or evil.

Ephesians 1:10-11

Eph 1:10 That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather together in

one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him:

Eph In whom also we have obtained an inheritance, being predestinated according to the purpose of him who worketh all things after the counsel of his own will:1:11

4. Divine counsel is immutable.

a. The decrees of God are unchangeable because He is unchangeable and knows all things.

b. All that God has purposed will take place.

c. The immutability of God is consistent with human freedom.

1. Man has a will to do whatsoever he chooses.

Matthew 17:12

Mat But I say unto you, That Elias is come already, and they knew him not, but have done unto him whatsoever they listed. Likewise shall also the Son of man suffer of them.17:12

2. God has determined that man may go as he so chooses.

Luke 22:22

Luke And truly the Son of man goeth, as it was determined: but woe unto that man by whom he is betrayed!22:22

C. The extent of God's determinate counsel.

What does the determinate counsel of God include?

1. It includes the fixedness of the physical world.

Psalms 119:89-91

Psa 119:89 LAMED. For ever, O LORD, thy word is settled in heaven.

Psa 119:90 Thy faithfulness is unto all generations: thou hast established the earth, and it abideth.

Psa 119:91 They continue this day according to thine ordinances: for all are thy servants.

2. It includes the order of the seasons.

Genesis 8:22

Gen While the earth remaineth, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease.8:22

3. It includes the boundaries and circumstances of nations.

Acts 17:26

Acts And hath made of one blood all nations of men for to dwell on all the face of the earth, and hath determined the times before appointed, and the bounds of their habitation;17:26

4. It includes the length of human life.

Hebrews 9:27

Heb And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment:9:27

Job 14:5

Job 14:5 Seeing his days are determined, the number of his months are with thee, thou hast appointed his bounds that he cannot pass;

Psalms 55:23

Psa 55:23 But thou, O God, shalt bring them down into the pit of destruction: bloody and deceitful men shall not live out half their days; but I will trust in thee.

Isaiah 38:1-8

Isa 38:1 In those days was Hezekiah sick unto death. And Isaiah the prophet the son of Amoz came unto him, and said unto him, Thus saith the LORD, Set thine house in order: for thou shalt die, and not live.

Isa 38:2 Then Hezekiah turned his face toward the wall, and prayed unto the LORD,

Isa 38:3 And said, Remember now, O LORD, I beseech thee, how I have walked before thee in truth and with a perfect heart, and have done that which is good in thy sight. And Hezekiah wept sore.

Isa 38:4 Then came the word of the LORD to Isaiah, saying,

Isa 38:5 Go, and say to Hezekiah, Thus saith the LORD, the God of David thy father, I have heard thy prayer, I have seen thy tears: behold, I will add unto thy days fifteen years.

Isa 38:6 And I will deliver thee and this city out of the hand of the king of Assyria: and I will defend this city.

Isa 38:7 And this shall be a sign unto thee from the LORD, that the LORD will do this thing that he hath spoken;

Isa 38:8 Behold, I will bring again the shadow of the degrees, which is gone down in the sun dial of Ahaz,

ten degrees backward. So the sun returned ten degrees, by which degrees it was gone down.

5. It includes the manner of one's death.

John 21:19

John This spake he, signifying by what death he should glorify God. And when he had spoken this, he saith unto him, Follow me. 21:19

2 Peter 1:14

2 Pet Knowing that shortly I must put off this my tabernacle, even as our Lord Jesus Christ hath showed me. 1:14

6. It includes the good acts of free men.

Ephesians 2:10

Eph 2:10 For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.

7. It includes the believer's place in Christ.

Ephesians 1:4

Eph 1:4 According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love:

8. It includes the establishment of Christ's kingdom.

Psalms 2:7-8

Psa 2:7 I will declare the decree: the LORD hath said unto me, Thou art my Son; this day have I begotten thee.

Psa 2:8 Ask of me, and I shall give thee the heathen for thine inheritance, and the uttermost parts of the earth for thy possession.

VII. The works of God.

A. The work of God in creation.

1. A definition of creation. Creation is the free act of bringing all things to be by the sovereign, personal God without pre-existent materials by the word of His power.

- a. Creation is a personal act, not a process.

- b. Creation is a free act, that is, God was moved by an internal purpose.
- c. Creation is the bringing forth of something that did not previously exist.

2. The proof or evidences of creation.

- a. There is direct affirmation of the Scriptures.

Genesis 1:1

Gen 1:1 In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.

- 1) The word “creation” in Genesis 1:1 is the strongest word in the Hebrew language to express absolute origination.
- 2) The word for creation “bara” is used three times in Genesis chapter one.
 - a) It is used in verse 1 in reference to the original creation.
 - b) It is used in verse 21 in reference to the creation of animal life.
 - c) It is used in verses 26-27 in reference to the origin of man.
- b. There are inferences throughout the Scripture. The doctrine of the creation has a prominent place in the Word of God.
 - 1) The world did not always exist.

Mark 13:19

Mark 13:19 For in those days shall be affliction, such as was not from the beginning of the creation which God created unto this time, neither shall be.

John 17:5

John 17:5 And now, O Father, glorify thou me with thine own self with the glory which I had with thee before the world was.

Ephesians 1:4

Eph 1:4 According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love:

Psalms 90:2

Psa 90:2 Before the mountains were brought forth, or ever thou hadst formed the earth and the world, even from everlasting to everlasting, thou art God.

- 2). Each person of the triune God existed prior to the creation of the world.

1 Corinthians 8:6

1 Cor 8:6 But to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we by him.

Colossians 1:17

And he is before all things, and by him all things consist. 1:17

- 3) The origin of the universe is ascribed to each person of the Trinity.

- a) The Father and the Son.

1 Corinthians 8:6

1 Cor 8:6 But to us there is but one God, the Father, of whom are all things, and we in him; and one Lord Jesus Christ, by whom are all things, and we by him.

- b) The Holy Spirit..

Genesis 1:2

Gen 1:2 And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.

- 3. Theories which contradict the Bible doctrine of

creation.

- a. The dualism theory which states that there are two eternal principles, God and matter.
- b. The emanation theory which declares that the universe is of the same substance as God and was produced by a series of emanations from the Godhead. This theory is the origin of Pantheism.
- c. The eternal creation theory proposes that creation was an act of God in the past eternity. This theory holds to more than one eternity.
- d. The spontaneous generation theory hold that creation is still going on, that is, that creation is a continuous process.

4. The time of creation.

- a. It is believed by many that there was two creation acts.
- 1) The original creation of Genesis 1:1

occurring approximately 7 to 10 billion years ago with the earth being created approximately 4 billion years ago.

2) The re-creation occurring approximately 6,000 years ago.

3) The explanation relating to this particular belief is that there was a pre-Adamic catastrophe.

Ecclesiastes 1:9

Eccl 1:9 The thing that hath been, it is that which shall be; and that which is done is that which shall be done: and there is no new thing under the sun.

Jeremiah 4:23-26

Jer I beheld the earth, and, lo, it was without form, and void; and the heavens, and they had no light.4:23

Jer I beheld the mountains, and, lo, they trembled, and all the hills moved lightly.4:24

Jer I beheld, and, lo, there was no man, and all the birds of the heavens were fled.4:25

Jer I beheld, and, lo, the fruitful place was a wilderness, and all the cities thereof were broken down at the presence of the LORD, and by his fierce anger.4:26

Isaiah 45:18

Isa 45:18 For thus saith the LORD that created the heavens; God himself that formed the earth and made it; he hath established it, he created it not in vain, he formed it to be inhabited: I am the LORD; and there is none else.

Genesis 1:2

Gen 1:2 And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness was upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters.
Genesis 1:28

Gen And God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it: and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.1:28

5. The design of creation.

a. The testimony of the Bible.

1) All God's purposes center in Himself.

Before there was the act of creation, there was a purpose.

Romans 11:36

Rom For of him, and through him, and to him, are all things: to whom be glory for ever. Amen. 11:36

Colossians 1:16

Col 1:16 For by him were all things created, that are in heaven, and that are in earth, visible and invisible, whether they be thrones, or dominions, or principalities, or powers: all things were created by him, and for him:

2) All God's purposes are according to His will and pleasure.

Ephesians 1:5-6

Eph 1:5 Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ

to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will,

Eph 1:6 To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the beloved.

Ephesians 1:9

Eph 1:9 Having made known unto us the mystery of his will, according to his good pleasure which he hath purposed in himself:

Revelation 4:11

Thou art worthy, O Lord, to receive glory and honour and power: for thou hast created all things, and for thy pleasure they are and were created. Rev 4:11

3) All God's purposes and acts are for His own glory.

Isaiah 43:7

Isa 43:7 Even every one that is called by my name: for I have created him for my glory, I have formed him; yea, I have made him.

Isaiah 60:21

Isa 60:21 Thy people also shall be all righteous: they shall inherit the land for ever, the branch of my planting, the work of my hands, that I may be glorified.

4) The end of God's dealing with man is the making known of God's wisdom, power and glory.

Psalms 143:11

Psa 143:11 Quicken me, O LORD, for thy name's sake: for thy righteousness' sake bring my soul out of trouble.
Ezekiel 36:21-22

Ezek 36:21 But I had pity for mine holy name, which the house of Israel had profaned among the heathen, whither they went.

Ezek 36:22 Therefore say unto the house of Israel, Thus saith the Lord GOD; I do not this for your sakes, O house of Israel, but for mine holy name's sake, which ye have profaned among the heathen, whither ye went. Israel

Ephesians 3:9-10

Eph 3:9 And to make all men see what is the fellowship of the mystery, which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God, who created all things by Jesus Christ:

Eph 3:10 To the intent that now unto the principalities and powers in heavenly places might be known by the church the manifold wisdom of God,

b. The testimony of reason.

1) God's glory is the only end actually and perfectly attained in the universe.

2) God's glory is the most valuable end.

3) God's glory is the only end consistent with His independence and sovereignty.

6. The areas of creation.

a. The universe.

Genesis 1:1

Gen 1:1 In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth.

b. Personal beings.

By personal beings is meant beings who possess self-determination and self-consciousness.

1) Creation of the angels.

The only source of information concerning angels is the Bible. The frequency of the mentioning of angels is indicative of their importance. There are 108 references to angels in the Old Testament and 165 references in the New Testament.

a) Angels are heavenly intelligence's.

Matthew 25:31

Mat 25:31 When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory:

b) The nature of angels.

(1) They are created beings.

Psalm 148:2-5

Psa 148:2 Praise ye him, all his angels: praise ye him, all his hosts.

Psa 148:3 Praise ye him, sun and moon: praise him, all ye stars of light.

Psa 148:4 Praise him, ye heavens of heavens, and

ye waters that be above the heavens.

Psa 148:5 Let them praise the name of the LORD: for he commanded, and they were created.

(2) They possess superhuman wisdom and intelligence.

Matthew 24:36

Mat 24:36 But of that day and hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels of heaven, but my Father only.

Matthew 18:10

Mat Take heed that ye despise not one of these little ones; for I say unto you, That in heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father which is in heaven.18:10

2 Samuel 14:20

2 Sam To fetch about this form of speech hath thy servant Joab done this thing: and my lord is wise, according to the wisdom of an angel of God, to know all things that are in the earth.14:20

(3) They are distinct from man.

1 Corinthians 6:3

1 Cor 6:3 Know ye not that we shall judge angels? how much more things that pertain to this life?

(4) They seem to constitute a company rather than a race.

Matthew 22:30

Mat For in the resurrection they neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are as the angels of God in heaven.22:30

Luke 20:35-36

Luke But they which shall be accounted worthy to obtain that world, and the resurrection from the dead, neither marry, nor are given in marriage:20:35

Luke Neither can they die any more: for they are equal unto the angels; and are the children of God, being the children of the resurrection.20:36

(5) They possess superhuman power.

Psalm 103:20

Psa 103:20 Bless the LORD, ye his angels, that excel in strength, that do his commandments, hearkening unto the voice of his word.

2 Peter 2:11

2 Pet Whereas angels, which are greater in power and might, bring not railing accusation against them before the Lord.2:11

c) Their organization.

The Scriptures clearly imply that angels constitute a hierarchy, that is, they are of various ranks and orders. This is shown by:

(1) The position of Gabriel.

Luke 1:19

Luke 1:19 And the angel answering said unto him, I am Gabriel, that stand in the presence of God; and am sent to speak unto thee, and to show thee these glad tidings.

(2) The designation of Michael as the archangel and one of the chief princes.

Daniel 10:13

Dan But the prince of the withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one

of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of .10:13 of

Jude 9

Jude 1:9 Yet Michael the archangel, when contending with the devil he disputed about the body of Moses, durst not bring against him a railing accusation, but said, The Lord rebuke thee.

(3) The designation of these heavenly beings as principalities, and power, and might, and dominion.

Ephesians 1:21

Eph Far above all principality, and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named, not only in this world, but also in that which is to come:1:21

d) Their number.

Daniel 7:10

Dan A fiery stream issued and came forth from before him: thousand thousands ministered unto him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him: the judgment was set, and the books were opened.7:10

Hebrews 12:22

Heb But ye are come unto , and unto the city of the living God, the heavenly , and to an innumerable company of angels,12:22

e) Their place of residence.

Matthew 22:30

Mat For in the resurrection they neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are as the angels of God in heaven.22:30

Luke 2:13-15

Luke And suddenly there was with the angel a multitude of the heavenly host praising God, and saying,2:13

Luke Glory to God in the highest, and on earth peace, good will toward men.2:14

Luke 2:15 And it came to pass, as the angels were gone away from them into heaven, the shepherds said one to another, Let us now go even unto Bethlehem, and see this thing which is come to pass, which the Lord hath made known unto us.

John 1:51

John 1:51 And he saith unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto you, Hereafter ye shall see heaven open, and the angels of God ascending and descending upon the Son of man.

- f) Their ministry.
- (1) On behalf of God's children.

Acts 12:15

Acts And they said unto her, Thou art mad. But she constantly

affirmed that it was even so. Then said they, It is his
angel.12:15

Matthew 18:10

Mat Take heed that ye despise not one of these little ones; for I say unto you, That
in heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father which is in heaven.18:
10

(2) They minister to those
who shall be heirs of salvation.

Hebrews 1:13-14

Heb But to which of the angels said he at any time, Sit on my right hand, until I
make thine enemies thy footstool?1:13

Heb Are they not all ministering spirits, sent forth to minister for them who shall be
heirs of salvation?1:14

(3) They keep those who
abide in the secret place of the Most High God.

Psalms 91:1

Psa 91:1 He that dwelleth in the secret place of the most High shall abide under the
shadow of the Almighty.

Psalms 91:11-12

Psa 91:11 For he shall give his angels charge over thee,
to keep thee in all thy ways.

Psa 91:12 They shall bear thee up in their hands, lest thou dash thy foot against a
stone.

(4) They protect God's
servants from their enemies.

2 Kings 6:15-17

2 Ki And when the servant of the man of God was risen early, and gone forth,
behold, an host compassed the city both with horses and chariots. And his servant
said unto him, Alas, my master! how shall we do?6:15

2 Ki And he answered, Fear not: for they that be with us are more than they that be
with them.6:16

2 Ki And Elisha prayed, and said, LORD, I pray thee, open his eyes, that he may
see. And the LORD opened the eyes of the young man; and he saw: and, behold, the
mountain was full of horses and chariots of fire round about Elisha.6:17

Psalm 34:7

Psa 34:7 The angel of the LORD encampeth round about them that fear him, and delivereth them.

(5) They deliver from great perils and all kinds of evil.

Acts 5:19

Acts But the angel of the Lord by night opened the prison doors, and brought them forth, and said, 5:19

Acts 12:8

Acts 12:8 And the angel said unto him, Gird thyself, and bind on thy sandals. And so he did. And he saith unto him, Cast thy garment about thee, and follow me.

Acts 12:11

Acts 12:11 And when Peter was come to himself, he said, Now I know of a surety, that the Lord hath sent his angel, and hath delivered me out of the hand of Herod, and from all the expectation of the people of the Jews.

(6) They cheer God's servants in times of hardships and dangers.

Acts 27:23-24

Acts 27:23 For there stood by me this night the

angel of God, whose I am, and whom I serve,

Acts 27:24 Saying, Fear not, Paul; thou must be brought before Caesar: and, lo, God hath given thee all them that sail with thee.

(7) They have been used to
reveal God's purpose to His servants.

Luke 1:11-13

Luke And there appeared unto him an angel of the Lord standing on the right side of the altar of incense.1:11

Luke And when Zacharias saw him, he was troubled, and fear fell upon him.1:12

Luke But the angel said unto him, Fear not, Zacharias: for thy prayer is heard; and thy wife Elisabeth shall bear thee a son, and thou shalt call his name John.1:13

(8) They have been used to
show God's servants what to do.

Matthew 1:20-2:13

Read this Scripture from the Bible.

(9) They take God's own to a

place of blessedness at death.

Luke 16:22

Luke And it came to pass, that the beggar died, and was carried by the angels into Abraham's bosom: the rich man also died, and was buried;16:22

(10) They will gather together
God's elect at Christ's return.

Matthew 24:31

Mat 24:31 And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

g) Their ministry is on the behalf of
God.

(1) They are in God's
presence beholding His face.

Matthew 18:10

Mat Take heed that ye despise not one of these little ones; for I say unto you, That in heaven their angels do always behold the face of my Father which is in heaven.18:10

Revelation 5:11-12

And I beheld, and I heard the voice of many angels round about the throne and the beasts and the elders: and the number of them was ten thousand times ten thousand, and thousands of thousands;

Rev 5:11

Saying with a loud voice, Worthy is the Lamb that was slain to receive power, and riches, and wisdom, and strength, and honour, and glory, and blessing. Rev 5:12

- (2) They brought God's law
to His people.

Acts 7:53

Acts Who have received the law by the disposition of angels, and have not kept it. 7:53

Galatians 3:19

Gal Wherefore then serveth the law? It was added because of transgressions, till the seed should come to whom the promise was made; and it was ordained by angels in the hand of a mediator. 3:19

- (3) They execute judgment
upon the enemies of God.

Acts 12:23

Acts And immediately the angel of the Lord smote him, because he gave not God the glory: and he was eaten of worms, and gave up the ghost.12:23

2 Kings 19:35

2 Ki And it came to pass that night, that the angel of the LORD went out, and smote in the camp of the Assyrians an hundred fourscore and five thousand: and when they arose early in the morning, behold, they were all dead corpses.19:35

2) Creation of demons.

a) The origin of demons.

The Bible is silent as to their origin but most Bible scholars believe they are the angels who kept not their first estate meaning they kept not their perfection, holiness and service before God.

2 Peter 2:4

2 Pet 2:4 For if God spared not the angels that sinned, but cast them down to hell, and delivered them into chains of darkness, to be reserved unto judgment;

Jude 6

Jude 1:6 And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains

under darkness unto the judgment of the great day.

b) The nature of demons.

(1) They are spirit beings.

Matthew 12:43

Mat When the unclean spirit is gone out of a man, he walketh through dry places, seeking rest, and findeth none.12:43

Luke 9:38-39

Luke And, behold, a man of the company cried out, saying, Master, I beseech thee, look upon my son: for he is mine only child.9:38

Luke And, lo, a spirit taketh him, and he suddenly crieth out; and it teareth him that he foameth again, and bruising him hardly departeth from him.9:39

Luke 9:42

Luke And as he was yet a coming, the devil threw him down, and tare him. And Jesus rebuked the unclean spirit, and healed the child, and delivered him again to his father.9:42

(2) They have personality.

Mark 1:24

Mark 1:24 Saying, Let us alone; what have we to do with thee, thou Jesus of Nazareth? art thou come to destroy us? I know thee who thou art, the Holy One of God.

(3) They are unclean.

Luke 4:36

Luke 4:36 And they were all amazed, and spake among themselves, saying, What a word is this! for with authority and power he commandeth the unclean spirits, and they come out.

(4) They are malicious and violent.

Matthew 8:28

Mat 8:28 And when he was come to the other side into the country of the Gergesenes, there met him two possessed with devils, coming out of the tombs, exceeding fierce, so that no man might pass by that way.

c) The number of demons.

Mark 5:9

Mark 5:9 And he asked him, What is thy name? And he

answered, saying, My name is Legion: for we are many.

d) The work of demons.

(1) They are agents of Satan.

Matthew 12:26-27

Mat 12:26 And if Satan cast out Satan, he is divided against himself; how shall then his kingdom stand?

Mat 12:27 And if I by Beelzebub cast out devils, by whom do your children cast them out? therefore they shall be your judges.

(2) They inflict physical
maladies upon men.

Matthew 12:22

Mat 12:22 Then was brought unto him one possessed with a devil, blind, and dumb: and he healed him, insomuch that the blind and dumb both spake and saw.

e) The influence of demons.

(1) They induce men to
practice formalism in their religious teachings and practice.

1 Timothy 4:1-3

1 Tim 4:1 Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some

shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils;

1 Tim 4:2 Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron;

1 Tim 4:3 Forbidding to marry, and commanding to abstain from meats, which God hath created to be received with thanksgiving of them which believe and know the truth.

(2) They induce men to live lives of personal uncleanness.

2 Peter 2:10-12

2 Pet But chiefly them that walk after the flesh in the lust of uncleanness, and despise government. Presumptuous are they, selfwilled, they are not afraid to speak evil of dignities.2:10

2 Pet Whereas angels, which are greater in power and might, bring not railing accusation against them before the Lord.2:11

2 Pet 2:12 But these, as natural brute beasts, made to be taken and destroyed, speak evil of the things

that they understand not; and shall utterly perish in their own corruption;

(3) They strive to prevent believers from living spiritual lives.

Ephesians 6:12

Eph For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.6:12

f) They personally enter into men and use their bodies.

Matthew 8:16

Mat When the even was come, they brought unto him many that were possessed with devils: and he cast out the spirits with his word, and healed all that were sick:8:16

Matthew 8:28

Mat And when he was come to the other side into the country of the Gergesenes, there met him two possessed with devils, coming out of the tombs, exceeding fierce, so that no man might pass by that way.8:28

3) Creation of the devil (Satan).

a) Satan's unfallen state.

(1) He was a being of beauty

and wisdom.

Ezekiel 28:12-13

Ezek 28:12 Son of man, take up a lamentation upon the king of Tyrus, and say unto him, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Thou sealest up the sum, full of wisdom, and perfect in beauty.

Ezek 28:13 Thou hast been in Eden the garden of God; every precious stone was thy covering, the sardius, topaz, and the diamond, the beryl, the onyx, and the jasper, the sapphire, the emerald, and the carbuncle, and gold: the workmanship of thy tabrets and of thy pipes was prepared in thee in the day that thou wast created.

(2) He was given a place on
God's holy mountain.

Ezekiel 28:14

Ezek 28:14 Thou art the anointed cherub that covereth; and I have set thee so: thou wast upon the holy ; thou hast walked up and down in the midst of the stones of fire. of

(3) He was sinless until he
fell.

Ezekiel 28:15-16

Ezek 28:15 Thou wast perfect in thy ways from the day that thou wast created, till iniquity was found in thee.

Ezek 28:16 By the multitude of thy merchandise they have filled the midst of thee with violence, and thou hast sinned: therefore I will cast thee as profane out of the : and I will destroy thee, O covering cherub, from the midst of the stones of fire. of

(4) His heart was lifted up
with pride.
Ezekiel 28:17

Ezek 28:17 Thine heart was lifted up because of thy beauty, thou hast corrupted thy wisdom by reason of thy brightness: I will cast thee to the ground, I will lay thee before kings, that they may behold thee.

b) The fall of Satan.

Isaiah 14:12-15

Isa How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations!14:12

Isa For thou hast said in thine heart, I will ascend into

heaven, I will exalt my throne above the stars of God: I will sit also upon the mount of the congregation, in the sides of the north: 14:13

Isa I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High. 14:14

Isa Yet thou shalt be brought down to hell, to the sides of the pit. 14:15

c) Some names by which Satan is known.

(1) Lucifer.

Isaiah 14:12

Isa How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning! how art thou cut down to the ground, which didst weaken the nations! 14:12

(2) Devil and adversary.

1 Peter 5:8

1 Pet 5:8 Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:

(3) Satan.

Luke 10:18

Luke And he said unto them, I beheld Satan

as lightning fall from heaven.10:18

(4) Accuser.

Revelation 12:10

And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength, and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ: for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day and night.Rev 12:10

(5) Prince of this world.

John 12:31

John Now is the judgment of this world: now shall the prince of this world be cast out.12:31

(6) Prince of darkness.

Ephesians 6:12

Eph For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.6:12

(7) Prince of the power of the
air.

Ephesians 2:2

Eph 2:2 Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience:

(8) God of this world.

2 Corinthians 4:4

2 Cor 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

(9) Beelzebub.

Matthew 12:24

Mat But when the Pharisees heard it, they said, This fellow doth not cast out devils, but by Beelzebub the prince of the devils.12:24

Mark 3:22-23

Mark And the scribes which came down from said, He hath Beelzebub, and by the prince of the devils casteth he out devils.3:22

Mark And he called them unto him, and said unto them in parables,

How can Satan cast out Satan?3:23

(10) Belial.

2 Corinthians 6:15

2 Cor And what concord hath Christ with Belial? or what part hath he that believeth with an infidel?6:15

(11) Leviathan.

Isaiah 27:1

Isa 27:1 In that day the LORD with his sore and great and strong sword shall punish leviathan the piercing serpent, even leviathan that crooked serpent; and he shall slay the dragon that is in the sea.

(12) Apollyon.

Revelation 9:11

And they had a king over them, which is the angel of the bottomless pit, whose name in the Hebrew tongue is Abaddon, but in the Greek tongue hath his name Apollyon.Rev 9:11

d) The personality of Satan or the devil.

(1) He was the first murderer and liar.

John 8:44

John Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it. 8:44

- (2) He tempted (tested)
Christ in the wilderness.

Matthew 4:1-11

Read from the Bible.

- (3) He put into the heart of
Judas the desire to betray Jesus.

John 13:2

John 13:2 And supper being ended, the devil having now put into the heart of Judas Iscariot, Simon's son, to betray him;

- (4) He filled Ananias's heart
to lie against the Holy Ghost.

Acts 5:3

Acts 5:3 But Peter said, Ananias, why hath Satan filled thine heart to lie to the Holy Ghost, and to

keep back part of the price of the land?

(5) He sows tares in the good field where good seed has been sown.

Matthew 13:19

Mat When any one heareth the word of the kingdom, and understandeth it not, then cometh the wicked one, and catcheth away that which was sown in his heart. This is he which received seed by the way side.13:19

Matthew 13:29

Mat But he said, Nay; lest while ye gather up the tares, ye root up also the wheat with them.13:29

(6) He goes about seeking to devour men.

1 Peter 5:8-9

1 Pet 5:8 Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:

1 Pet 5:9 Whom resist stedfast in the faith, knowing that the same afflictions are accomplished in your brethren that are in the world.

e) The position of the devil.

(1) He is so exalted that Michael did not dare bring a railing accusation against him.

Jude 9

Jude 1:9 Yet Michael the archangel, when contending with the devil he disputed about the body of Moses, durst not bring against him a railing accusation, but said, The Lord rebuke thee.

(2) He is the Prince and power of the air.

Ephesians 2:2

Eph 2:2 Wherein in time past ye walked according to the course of this world, according to the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now worketh in the children of disobedience:

(3) He is the prince of this present world.

John 12:31

John Now is the judgment of this world: now shall the prince of this world be cast out.12:31

John 14:30

John Hereafter I will not talk much with you: for the prince of this world cometh, and hath nothing in me.14:30

John 16:11

John Of judgment, because the prince of this world is judged.16:11

f) The power of the devil.

(1) It exceeds that of man.

Ephesians 6:11-17

Read from the Bible.

(2) He is the king over the realm of demons.

Luke 11:14-18

Luke And he was casting out a devil, and it was dumb. And it came to pass, when the devil was gone out, the dumb spake; and the people wondered.11:14

Luke But some of them said, He casteth out devils through Beelzebub the chief of the devils.11:15

Luke And others, tempting him, sought of him a sign from heaven.11:16

Luke But he, knowing their thoughts, said unto them, Every kingdom divided against itself is brought to

desolation; and a house divided against a house falleth.1
1:17

Luke If Satan also be divided against himself, how shall his kingdom stand?
because ye say that I cast out devils through Beelzebub.11:18

(3) He has a throne.

Revelation 2:13

I know thy works and where thou dwellest, even where Satan's seat is: and thou hold
est fast my name, and hast not denied my faith, even in those days wherein Antipas
was my faithful martyr, who was slain among you, where Satan dwelleth.Rev 2:13

(4) He has a kingdom.

Revelation 19:19

And I saw the beast, and the kings of the earth, and their armies, gathered together
to make war against him that sat on the horse, and against his army.Rev 19:19

Matthew 12:25

Mat And Jesus knew their thoughts, and said unto them, Every kingdom divided
against itself is brought to

desolation; and every city or house divided against itself shall not stand:12:25

(5) He can masquerade as an angel of light.

2 Corinthians 11:14-15

2 Cor And no marvel; for Satan himself is transformed into an angel of light.11:14

2 Cor Therefore it is no great thing if his ministers also be transformed as the ministers of righteousness; whose end shall be according to their works.11:15

(6) He has his meeting places.

Revelation 2:9

Rev 2:9 I know thy works, and tribulation, and poverty, (but thou art rich) and I know the blasphemy of them which say they are Jews, and are not, but are the synagogue of Satan.

(7) He had the power to resist and retard the efforts of a glorious angel.

Daniel 10:5-6

Dan 10:5 Then I lifted up mine eyes, and looked, and behold a certain man

clothed in linen, whose loins were girded with fine gold of Uphaz:

Dan 10:6 His body also was like the beryl, and his face as the appearance of lightning, and his eyes as lamps of fire, and his arms and his feet like in colour to polished brass, and the voice of his words like the voice of a multitude.

Daniel 10:12-13

Dan Then said he unto me, Fear not, Daniel: for from the first day that thou didst set thine heart to understand, and to chasten thyself before thy God, thy words were heard, and I am come for thy words.10:12

Dan But the prince of the withstood me one and twenty days: but, lo, Michael, one of the chief princes, came to help me; and I remained there with the kings of .10:13 of

(8) The entire mass of lost men is under Satan's power.

1 John 5:19

1 John And we know that we are of God, and the whole world lieth in wickedness.5:19

(9) Satan's power is limited by the will of God.

Job 1:10-11

Job Hast not thou made an hedge about him, and about his house, and about all that he hath on every side? thou hast blessed the work of his hands, and his substance is increased in the land.1:10

Job But put forth thine hand now, and touch all that he hath, and he will curse thee to thy face.1:11

g) The moral nature of Satan.

` (1) He is exceeding cunning.

2 Corinthians 2:11

2 Cor Lest Satan should get an advantage of us: for we are not ignorant of his devices.2:11

(2) He exercises his wiles against believers.

Ephesians 6:11-12

Eph Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil.6:11

Eph For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against

principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.6:12

(3) He displays signs and lying wonders to deceive.

1 Thessalonians 2:8-10

1 Th 2:8 So being affectionately desirous of you, we were willing to have imparted unto you, not the gospel of God only, but also our own souls, because ye were dear unto us.

1 Th 2:9 For ye remember, brethren, our labour and travail: for labouring night and day, because we would not be chargeable unto any of you, we preached unto you the gospel of God.

1 Th Ye are witnesses, and God also, how holily and justly and unblameably we behaved ourselves among you that believe:2:10

(4) He is exceedingly wicked.

a] He is called the wicked one and evil one.

1 John 5:18

1 John We know that whosoever is born of God sinneth not; but he that is begotten of God keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not.5:18

Matthew 5:37

Mat But let your communication be, Yea, yea; Nay, nay: for whatsoever is more than these cometh of evil.5:37

b] He is the original sinner.

1 John 3:8

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

John 8:44

John Ye are of your father the devil, and the lusts of your father ye

will do. He was a murderer from the beginning, and abode not in the truth, because there is no truth in him. When he speaketh a lie, he speaketh of his own: for he is a liar, and the father of it.8:44

c] He blinds the minds of the unbeliever.

2 Corinthians 4:4

2 Cor 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

d] He takes away the gospel in some cases.

Luke 8:12

Luke Those by the way side are they that hear; then cometh the devil, and taketh away the word out of their hearts, lest they should

believe and be saved.8:12

h) The devil's sphere of operation.

(1) He has the means of
accusing the believer even in heaven.

Job 1:6

Job 1:6 Now there was a day when the sons of God came to present themselves
before the LORD, and Satan came also among them.

Ephesians 6:11-13

Eph Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles
of the devil.6:11

Eph For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against
powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this world, against spiritual wickedness
in high places.6:12

Eph 6:13 Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to
withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand.

Zechariah 3:1-3

Zec 1:1 In the eighth month, in the second year of Darius, came the word of the LORD unto Zechariah, the son of Berechiah, the son of Iddo the prophet, saying,

Zec 1:2 The LORD hath been sore displeased with your fathers.

Zec 1:3 Therefore say thou unto them, Thus saith the LORD of hosts; Turn ye unto me, saith the LORD of hosts, and I will turn unto you, saith the LORD of hosts.

i) The work of the devil.

(1) He brought sin into the world.

Genesis 3:1

Gen 3:1 Now the serpent was more subtle than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden?

Genesis 3:6

Gen 3:6 And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and a tree to be desired to make one wise, she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, and

gave also unto her husband with her; and he did eat.

(2) He tempts men to sin.

1 Chronicles 21:1

1 Chr 21:1 And Satan stood up against , and provoked David to number .

(3) He prepares snares for men.

1 Timothy 3:7

1 Tim 3:7 Moreover he must have a good report of them which are without; lest he fall into reproach and the snare of the devil.

(4) He puts wicked purposes into the hearts of men.

Acts 5:3

Acts 5:3 But Peter said, Ananias, why hath Satan filled thine heart to lie to the Holy Ghost, and to keep back part of the price of the land?

(5) He blinds the minds of the unbelievers.

2 Corinthians 4:4

2 Cor 4:4 In whom the god of this world hath blinded the minds of them which believe not, lest the

light of the glorious gospel of Christ, who is the image of God, should shine unto them.

(6) He takes away the Word of God from those who hear it and do not understand.

Mark 4:15

Mark And these are they by the way side, where the word is sown; but when they have heard, Satan cometh immediately, and taketh away the word that was sown in their hearts.4:15

(7) He buffets God's servants.

2 Corinthians 12:7

2 Cor 12:7 And lest I should be exalted above measure through the abundance of the revelations, there was given to me a thorn in the flesh, the messenger of Satan to buffet me, lest I should be exalted above measure.

(8) He accuses the brethren before God.

Revelation 12:10

And I heard a loud voice saying in heaven, Now is come salvation, and strength,

and the kingdom of our God, and the power of his Christ:
for the accuser of our brethren is cast down, which accused them before our God day
and night.Rev 12:10

j) The destiny of Satan.

(1) He is under an
unending curse.

Genesis 3:14-15

Gen 3:14 And the LORD God said unto the serpent, Because thou hast done this,
thou art cursed above all cattle, and above every beast of the field; upon thy belly
shalt thou go, and dust shalt thou eat all the days of thy life:

Gen And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and
her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.3:15

(2) His doom was
predicted in the Old Testament.

Isaiah 14:14

Isa I will ascend above the heights of the clouds; I will be like the most High.14:14

(3) He will be confined to the bottomless pit just prior to the millennial.

Revelation 20:1-3

Rev 20:1 And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand.

Rev 20:2 And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years,

Rev 20:3 And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be

loosed a little season.

- (4) He will be consigned to the lake of fire after the millennial.

Revelation 20:10

Rev 20:10 And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.

- k) The believers course of action in relation to Satan.

- (1) The believer is to remember that Satan has been conquered.

1 John 3:8

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

- (2) The believer is not to give way to Satan.

Ephesians 4:27

Eph Neither give place to the devil.4:27

- (3) The believer is to be sober and vigilant in regard to Satan.

1 Peter 5:8

1 Pet 5:8 Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour:

- (4) The believer is to personally resist the devil.

James 4:7

James 4:7 Submit yourselves therefore to God. Resist the devil, and he will flee from you.

- (5) The believer is to put on the whole armor of God in his warfare against Satan.

Ephesians 6:11-18

Eph Put on the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to stand against the wiles of the devil.6:11

Eph For we wrestle not against flesh and blood, but against principalities, against powers, against the rulers of the darkness of this

world, against spiritual wickedness in high places.6:12

Eph 6:13 Wherefore take unto you the whole armour of God, that ye may be able to withstand in the evil day, and having done all, to stand.

Eph Stand therefore, having your loins girt about with truth, and having on the breastplate of righteousness;6:14

Eph And your feet shod with the preparation of the gospel of peace;6:15

Eph Above all, taking the shield of faith, wherewith ye shall be able to quench all the fiery darts of the wicked.6:16

Eph And take the helmet of salvation, and the sword of the Spirit, which is the word of God:6:17

Eph Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;6:18

B. The work of God in preservation.

Preservation has to do with the continued existence of created things.

1. The Scriptures clearly distinguish between creation and

preservation.

Nehemiah 9:6

Neh 9:6 Thou, even thou, art LORD alone; thou hast made heaven, the heaven of heavens, with all their host, the earth, and all things that are therein, the seas, and all that is therein, and thou preserves them all; and the host of heaven worshippeth thee.

2. God sustains physical life.

Psalm 66:9

Psa 66:9 Which holdeth our soul in life, and suffereth not our feet to be moved.

Acts 17:28

Acts For in him we live, and move, and have our being; as certain also of your own poets have said, For we are also his offspring.17:28

3. In Jesus Christ all things consist (hold together).

Colossians 1:17

Col 1:17 And he is before all things, and by him all things consist.

Hebrews 1:2-3

Heb 1:2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

Heb 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high;

C. The work of God in miracles.

1. Miracles in the time of Elijah and Elisha.

a. Elijah and the prophets of Baal.

1 Kings 18:36-39

1 Ki 18:36 And it came to pass at the time of the offering of the evening sacrifice, that Elijah the prophet came near, and said, LORD God of Abraham, Isaac, and of Israel, let it be known this day that thou art God in Israel, and that I am thy servant, and that I have done all these things at thy word.

1 Ki 18:37 Hear me, O LORD, hear me, that this people may know that thou art the LORD God, and that thou hast turned their heart back again.

1 Ki 18:38 Then the fire of the LORD fell, and consumed the burnt sacrifice, and the wood, and the stones, and the dust, and licked up the water that was in the trench.

1 Ki And when all the people saw it, they fell on their faces: and they said, The LORD, he is the God; the LORD, he is the God.18:39

b. Elisha and Naaman.

2 Kings 5:14-15

2 Ki Then went he down, and dipped himself seven times in , according to the saying of the man of God: and his flesh came again like unto the flesh of a little child, and he was clean.5:14

2 Ki 5:15 And he returned to the man of God, he and all his company, and came, and stood before him: and he said, Behold, now I know that there is no God in all the earth, but in Israel: now therefore, I pray thee, take a blessing of thy servant.

c. Elisha and the ax head.

2 Kings 6:5-6

2 Ki 6:5 But as one was felling a beam, the ax head fell into the water: and he cried, and said, Alas, master! for it was borrowed.

2 Ki 6:6 And the man of God said, Where fell it? And he showed him the place. And he cut down a stick, and cast it in thither; and the iron did swim.

2. In the time of the exile.
 - a. The Hebrew children and the fiery furnace.

Daniel 3:15-29

Read from the Bible.

- b. Daniel in the den of lions.

Daniel was not merely in the lions den, he was in the den of lions. The lions den implies the absence of lions. Den of lions denotes the presence of lions from which the Lord delivered Daniel.

Daniel 6:12

Dan 6:12 Then they came near, and spake before the king concerning the king's decree; Hast thou not signed a decree, that every man that shall ask a petition of any God or man within thirty days, save of thee, O king, shall be cast into the den of lions? The king answered and said, The thing is true, according to the law of the Medes and Persians, which altereth not.

Daniel 6:20

Dan 6:20 And when he came to the den, he cried with a lamentable voice unto Daniel: and the king spake and said to Daniel, O Daniel, servant of the living God, is thy God, whom thou servest continually, able to deliver thee from the lions?

3. The introduction of Christianity.

a. The apostles performed miracles.

Acts 2:43

Acts And fear came upon every soul: and many wonders and signs were done by the apostles.2:43

b. Phillip performed miracles.
Acts 8:5-7

Acts 8:5 Then Philip went down to the city of , and preached Christ unto them.

Acts 8:6 And the people with one accord gave heed unto those things which Philip spake, hearing and seeing the miracles which he did.

Acts 8:7 For unclean spirits, crying with loud voice, came out of many that were possessed with them: and many taken with palsies, and that were lame, were healed.

c. Jesus performed miracles.

- 1) Feeding of the 5000.
- 2) Healing the sick.
- 3) Raising the dead.
- 5) Causing the lame to walk.
- 6) Making the blind to see.
- 7) Casting out devils.

D. The work of God in providence.

1. His providence extends over the world.

a. Vegetation.

Psalm 104:14

Psa 104:14 He causeth the grass to grow for the cattle,
and herb for the service of man: that he may bring forth food out of the earth;

b. Weather.

Psalm 135:5-7

Psa 135:5 For I know that the LORD is great, and that our Lord is above all gods.

Psa 135:6 Whatsoever the LORD pleased, that did he in heaven, and in earth, in the
seas, and all deep places.

Psa 135:7 He causeth the vapours to ascend from the ends of the earth; he maketh lig
htnings for the rain; he bringeth the wind out of his treasures.

Psalm 147:8-9

Psa 147:8 Who covereth the heaven with clouds, who prepareth rain for the earth,
who maketh grass to grow upon the mountains.

Psa 147:9 He giveth to the beast his food, and to the young ravens which cry.

Job 37:6-13

Job 37:6 For he saith to the snow, Be thou on the earth; likewise to the small rain,
and to the great rain of his strength.

Job 37:7 He sealeth up the hand of every man; that all men may know his work.

Job 37:8 Then the beasts go into dens, and remain in their places.

Job 37:9 Out of the south cometh the whirlwind: and cold out of the north.

Job 37:10 By the breath of God frost is given: and the breadth of the waters is
straitened.

Job 37:11 Also by watering he wearieth the thick cloud: he scattereth his bright
cloud:

Job 37:12 And it is turned round about by his counsels: that they may do whatsoever
he commandeth them upon the face of the world in the earth.

Job 37:13 He causeth it to come, whether for correction, or for his land, or for mercy.

c. Seasons.

Acts 14:17

Acts Nevertheless he left not himself without witness, in that he did good, and gave

us rain from heaven, and fruitful seasons, filling our hearts with food and gladness.14
:17

Genesis 8:22

Gen While the earth remaineth, seedtime and harvest, and cold and heat, and summer and winter, and day and night shall not cease.8:22

d. Natural phenomena.

Job 9:5-6

Job 9:5 Which removeth the mountains, and they know not: which overturneth them in his anger.

Job 9:6 Which shaketh the earth out of her place, and the pillars thereof tremble.

e. Bird and animal life.

Matthew 6:26

Mat Behold the fowls of the air: for they sow not, neither do they reap, nor gather into barns; yet your heavenly Father feedeth them. Are ye not much better than they?
6:26

Matthew 10:29

Mat Are not two sparrows sold for a farthing? and one of them shall not fall on the ground without your Father.10:29

f. To the affairs of nations.

Job 12:23

Job He increaseth the nations, and destroyeth them: he enlargeth the nations, and straiteneth them again.12:23

Psalm 22:28

Psa For the kingdom is the LORD'S: and he is the governor among the nations.22:28

Acts 17:26

Acts And hath made of one blood all nations of men for to dwell on all the face of the earth, and hath determined the times before appointed, and the bounds of their habitation;17:26

Daniel 2:21

Dan And he changeth the times and the seasons: he removeth kings, and setteth up kings: he giveth wisdom unto the wise, and knowledge to them that know understanding:2:21

2. His providence extends to man's birth and lot in life.

a. The beginning of man's existence is determined by God's decree.

Psalm 139:16

Psa 139:16 Thine eyes did see my substance, yet being unperfect; and in thy book all my members were written, which in continuance were fashioned, when as yet there was none of them.

- b. Every man's position in life has been determined by God.

1 Samuel 16:1

1 Sam 16:1 And the LORD said unto Samuel, How long wilt thou mourn for Saul, seeing I have rejected him from reigning over ? fill thine horn with oil, and go, I will send thee to Jesse the Bethlehemite: for I have provided me a king among his sons.

Jeremiah 1:5

Jer 1:5 Before I formed thee in the belly I knew thee; and before thou camest forth out of the womb I sanctified thee, and I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations.

3. His providence extends to the most minute things in life.

Matthew 10:30

Mat But the very hairs of your head are all numbered.10:30

4. His providence extends to the free acts of man.
Exodus 15:26

Exo 15:26 And said, If thou wilt diligently hearken to the voice of the LORD thy God, and wilt do that which is right in his sight, and wilt give ear to his commandments, and keep all his statutes, I will put none of these diseases upon thee, which I have brought upon the Egyptians: for I am the LORD that healeth thee.

Proverbs 20:24

Prov Man's goings are of the LORD; how can a man then understand his own way?20:24

Philippians 2:13

Phil For it is God which worketh in you both to will and to do of his good pleasure.2:13

Ephesians 2:10

Eph For we are his workmanship, created in Christ Jesus unto good works, which God hath before ordained that we should walk in them.2:10

5. His providence is exercised over the evil acts of men in several ways.

- a. By prevention.

Genesis 20:6

Gen 20:6 And God said unto him in a dream, Yea, I know that thou didst this in the integrity of thy heart; for I also withheld thee from sinning against me: therefore suffered I thee not to touch her.

Genesis 31:24

Gen 31:24 And God came to Laban the Syrian in a dream by night, and said unto him, Take heed that thou speak not to Jacob either good or bad.

Psalm 19:13

Psa Keep back thy servant also from presumptuous sins; let them not have dominion over me: then shall I be upright, and I shall be innocent from the great transgression.19:13

Hosea 2:6

Hosea 2:6 Therefore, behold, I will hedge up thy way with thorns, and make a wall, that she shall not find her paths.

b. By permission.

2 Chronicles 32:31

2 Chr 32:31 Howbeit in the business of the ambassadors of the princes of , who

sent unto him to inquire of the wonder that was done in the land, God left him, to try him, that he might know all that was in his heart.

c. By direction.

Genesis 50:20

Gen 50:20 But as for you, ye thought evil against me; but God meant it unto good, to bring to pass, as it is this day, to save much people alive.

Acts 4:17-28

Read from the Bible.

Romans 9:17

Rom For the scripture saith unto Pharaoh, Even for this same purpose have I raised thee up, that I might show my power in thee, and that my name might be declared throughout all the earth.9:17

d. By determination.

Job 1:12

Job And the LORD said unto Satan, Behold, all that he hath is in thy power; only upon himself put not forth thine hand. So Satan went forth from the presence of the LORD.1:12

Job 2:6

Job 2:6 And the LORD said unto Satan, Behold, he is in thine hand; but save his life.

1 Corinthians 10:13

1 Cor There hath no temptation taken you but such as is common to man: but God is faithful, who will not suffer you to be tempted above that ye are able; but will with the temptation also make a way to escape, that ye may be able to bear it.10:13

2 Thessalonians 2:7

2 Th 2:7 For the mystery of iniquity doth already work: only he who now letteth will let, until he be taken out of the way.

Basic Christian Doctrine

PART FOUR

Anthropology---The Doctrine of Man

I. Man as a personal being.

A. The origin of man.

1. Man is the result of divine counsel.

Genesis 1:26

Gen And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.1:26

2. Man is an immediate act of the triune God.

Genesis 1:27

Gen So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.1:27

3. Man was created after the divine type.

Genesis 1:27

Gen So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.1:27

B. The unity of the human race.

1. The unity of the human race is implied from Adam's

origin. The descendants of man all come from Adam and Eve. Adam means “man” and Eve means “mother of all living.”

Genesis 1:26-28

Gen And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.1:26

Gen So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.1:27

Gen And God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth, and subdue it: and have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over every living thing that moveth upon the earth.1:28

2. The unity of the human race is confirmed by Christ.

Matthew 19:4

Mat 19:4 And he answered and said unto them, Have ye not read, that he which made them at the beginning made them male and female,

3. The unity of the human race is verified by Paul.

Acts 17:26

Acts And hath made of one blood all nations of men for to dwell on all the face of the earth, and hath determined the times before appointed, and the bounds of their habitation;17:26

4. The unity of the human race is proved by the universality of sin.

Romans 5:12-14

Rom Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned:5:12

Rom (For until the law sin was in the world: but sin is not imputed when there is no law.5:13

Rom Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam's transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come.5:14

5. The unity of the human race is corroborated by science and history.

a. History traces tribes and nations to a common source.

b. Philology (historical and comparative linguistics) agrees that all languages point to a common origin.

c. Physiology (a branch of biology that deals with the functions and activities of life or of living matter such as organs, tissues or cells) says the common functioning indicates that all belong to one species.

d. Psychology (the science of mind and behavior) indicates there are common mental, social and moral characteristics in man.

C. Man is a personal being. Person beings possess certain characteristics.

1. Rationality or self-consciousness.

Colossians 3:10

And have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him:3:10

2. Power of perception.

Adam had knowledge that enabled him to name the animals.

Genesis 2:19

Gen 2:19 And out of the ground the LORD God formed every beast of the field, and every fowl of the air; and brought them unto Adam to see what he would call them: and whatsoever Adam called every living creature, that was the name thereof.

3. Self will or self determination.

Proverbs 21:2

Prov 21:2 Every way of a man is right in his own eyes: but the LORD pondereth the hearts.

D. Man is a moral being. He was created with the power to know right from wrong.

Genesis 2:17

Gen But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.2:17

- E. Man was placed in a position of responsibility.

1. He was to dress and keep the garden of Eden.

Genesis 2:15

Gen And the LORD God took the man, and put him into the garden of Eden to dress it and to keep it.2:15

2. He was confronted by law.

Genesis 2:17

Gen But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.2:17

3. He was placed as lord over creation.
Psalm 8:6-8

Psa 8:6 Thou madest him to have dominion over the works of thy hands; thou hast put all things under his feet:

Psa 8:7 All sheep and oxen, yea, and the beasts of the field;

Psa 8:8 The fowl of the air, and the fish of the sea, and whatsoever passeth through the paths of the seas.

4. He was given a sacred life.

Genesis 9:5-6

Gen 9:5 And surely your blood of your lives will I require; at the hand of every beast will I require it, and at the hand of man; at the hand of every man's brother will I require the life of man.

Gen 9:6 Whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed: for in the image of God made he man.

- F. The fall of man.

1. The probation (trial period, test, testing period) of man.

Genesis 3:1-5

Gen 3:1 Now the serpent was more subtle than any beast of the field which the LORD God had made. And he said unto the woman, Yea, hath God said, Ye shall not eat of every tree of the garden?

Gen 3:2 And the woman said unto the serpent, We may eat of the fruit of the trees of the garden:

Gen 3:3 But of the fruit of the tree which is in the midst of the garden, God hath said, Ye shall not eat of it, neither shall ye touch it, lest ye die.

Gen 3:4 And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die:

Gen 3:5 For God doth know that in the day ye eat thereof, then your eyes shall be opened, and ye shall be as gods, knowing good and evil.

- a. His environment was suited to his nature.

Genesis 2:18

Gen And the LORD God said, It is not good that the man should be alone; I will make him an help meet for him.2:18

- b. The necessity of man's probation. Man possessed moral freedom; therefore, his freedom had to be tested.

- c. The means of man's testing was the tree of knowledge.

Genesis 2:9

Gen 2:9 And out of the ground made the LORD God to grow every tree that is pleasant to the sight, and good for food; the tree of life also in the midst of the garden,

and the tree of knowledge of good and evil.

Genesis 2:17

Gen But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.2:17

d. The method of man's probation. Satan was used in the testing of man. Though he did not appeal directly to the man, he sought the fall of man through his helpmate.

Genesis 3:4

Gen 3:4 And the serpent said unto the woman, Ye shall not surely die:

The approach Satan made to Eve were taken in the following steps.

- 1) Satan went to her when she was alone.
- 2) Satan insinuated doubt to her as to what God had told Adam.
- 3) Satan raised the question of God's veracity or honesty.
- 4) Satan made his appeal to the fleshly appetite.

2. The disobedience of man.

Genesis 3:6-8

Gen 3:6 And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and a tree to be desired to make one wise, she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, and gave also unto her husband with her; and he did eat.

Gen 3:7 And the eyes of them both were opened, and they knew that they were naked; and they sewed fig leaves together, and made themselves aprons.

Gen 3:8 And they heard the voice of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day: and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God amongst the trees of the garden.

3. The consequences of man's disobedience.

Genesis 3:8-24

a. The consequences to Adam, Eve and Satan.

- 1) The relationship of man with God was

disrupted.

Genesis 3:8

Gen 3:8 And they heard the voice of the LORD God walking in the garden in the cool of the day: and Adam and his wife hid themselves from the presence of the LORD God amongst the trees of the garden.

2) The old serpent (Satan) was degraded.

Genesis 3:14

Gen 3:14 And the LORD God said unto the serpent, Because thou hast done this, thou art cursed above all cattle, and above every beast of the field; upon thy belly shalt thou go, and dust shalt thou eat all the days of thy life:

Numbers 21:9

Num 21:9 And Moses made a serpent of brass, and put it upon a pole, and it came to pass, that if a serpent had bitten any man, when he beheld the serpent of brass, he lived.

John 3:14

John And as Moses lifted up the serpent in the wilderness, even so must the Son of man be lifted up:3:14

Revelation 12:9

Rev 12:9 And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.

b. The posterity of Adam was thrown into inherited sin.

Romans 5:12

Rom Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned:5:12

Romans 5:18-19

Rom Therefore as by the offence of one judgment came upon all men to condemnation;

even so by the righteousness of one the free gift came upon all men unto justification of life.5:18

Rom For as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall many be made righteous.5:19

II. The entrance of sin.

Sin is an awful fact and is universally attested.

A. What is sin?

1. What is sin according to the Scriptures?

a. Sin is the failure to conform to the divine standard literally meaning "missing the mark."

Romans 3:23

Rom For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;3:23

b. Sin is the transgression of the law.

1 John 3:4

1 John 3:4 Whosoever committeth sin transgresseth also the law: for sin is the transgression of the law.

c. Sin is a state of being.

1 John 5:17

1 John All unrighteousness is sin: and there is a sin not unto death.5:17

James 4:17

James Therefore to him that knoweth to do good, and doeth it not, to him it is sin.4:17

d. Sin is a condition of the heart.

Matthew 15:19

Mat For out of the heart proceed evil thoughts, murders, adulteries, fornications, thefts, false witness, blasphemies:15:19

Matthew 5:22

Mat But I say unto you, That whosoever is angry with his brother without a cause

shall be in danger of the judgment: and whosoever shall say to his brother, Raca, shall be in danger of the council: but whosoever shall say, Thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire.5:22

Romans 7:8-10

Rom 7:8 But sin, taking occasion by the commandment, wrought in me all manner of concupiscence. For without the law sin was dead.

Rom 7:9 For I was alive without the law once: but when the commandment came, sin revived, and I died.

Rom And the commandment, which was ordained to life, I found to be unto death.7:10

2. Sin is an everyday experience of life.

1 John 1:8

1 John 1:8 If we say that we have no sin, we deceive ourselves, and the truth is not in us.

Romans 7:19-20

Rom For the good that I would I do not: but the evil which I would not, that I do.7:19

Rom Now if I do that I would not, it is no more I that do it, but sin that dwelleth in me.7:20

B. The beginning of sin.

Romans 5:19

Rom For as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall many be made righteous.5:19

1 John 3:8

1 John 3:8 He that committeth sin is of the devil; for the devil sinneth from the beginning. For this purpose the Son of God was manifested, that he might destroy the works of the devil.

C. The universality of sin.

1. The universality of sin is a direct statement of the Scriptures.

Romans 3:9-12

Rom 3:9 What then? are we better than they? No, in no wise: for we have before proved both Jews and Gentiles, that they are all under sin;

Rom As it is written, There is none righteous, no, not one:3:10

Rom There is none that understandeth, there is none that seeketh after God.3:11

Rom 3:12 They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one.

Romans 3:22-23

Rom Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference:3:22

Rom For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;3:23

2. The universality of sin is seen in the common judgments of mankind.

a. There is a universal practice of men calling for a

priesthood and a sacrifice. Every form of religion recognizes the need of a priesthood ministry and the need of sacrifice.

b. There is a universal recognition of imperfection. Every man comes short of perfection.

Psalm 51:5

Psa 51:5 Behold, I was shapen in iniquity, and in sin did my mother conceive me.

c. There is a universal need of atonement and regeneration.

Isaiah 53:6

Isa 53:6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

John 3:3

John 3:3 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the . of

John 3:5-7

John 3:5 Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.

John 3:6 That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit.

John 3:7 Marvel not that I said unto thee, Ye must be born again.

John 3:16

John For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.3:16

d. There is a universal recognition of condemnation resting upon all who do not receive Jesus Christ as their Savior.

John 3:18-21

John He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.3:18

John And this is the condemnation, that light is come into the world, and men loved darkness rather than light, because their deeds were evil.3:19

John For every one that doeth evil hateth the light, neither cometh to the light, lest his deeds should be reproved.3:20

John But he that doeth truth cometh to the light, that his deeds may be made manifest, that they are wrought in God.3:21

John 3:36

John He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.3:36

D. The consequences of sin.

The effect of Adam's sin may be set forth by three words.

1. Depravity which is the lack of original righteousness or holy affection toward God involving the corruption of man's moral nature which biases him to evil.
2. Guilt which is the result of depravity. By guilt is meant deserved punishment for self determined violation of law or failure to conform to that law. Guilt is universal with the human race but there are degrees of guilt attached to different kinds of sin.

Hebrews 10:28-31

Heb He that despised Moses' law died without mercy under two or three witnesses.10:28

Heb 10:29 Of how much sorer punishment, suppose ye, shall he be thought worthy, who hath trodden under foot the Son of God, and hath counted the blood of the covenant, wherewith he was sanctified, an unholy thing, and hath done despite unto the Spirit of grace?

Heb For we know him that hath said, Vengeance belongeth unto me, I will recompense, saith the Lord. And again, The Lord shall judge his people.10:30

Heb It is a fearful thing to fall into the hands of the living God.10:31

Romans 2:6-8

Rom 2:6 Who will render to every man according to his deeds:

Rom 2:7 To them who by patient continuance in well doing seek for glory and honour and immortality, eternal life:

Rom 2:8 But unto them that are contentious, and do not obey the truth, but obey unrighteousness, indignation and wrath,

a. There are sins of ignorance.

Matthew 10:12-15

Mat And when ye come into an house, salute it.10:12

Mat And if the house be worthy, let your peace come upon it: but if it be not worthy, let your peace return to you.10:13

Mat And whosoever shall not receive you, nor hear your words, when ye depart out of that house or city, shake off the dust of your feet.10:14

Mat Verily I say unto you, It shall be more tolerable for the and Gomorrha in the day of judgment, than for that city.10:15 of

Romans 2:12

Rom For as many as have sinned without law shall also perish without law: and as many as have sinned in the law shall be judged by the law;2:12

Acts 17:28-31

Acts For in him we live, and move, and have our being; as certain also of your own poets have said, For we are also his offspring.17:28

Acts Forasmuch then as we are the offspring of God, we ought not to think that the Godhead is like unto gold, or silver, or stone, graven by art and man's device.17:29

Acts And the times of this ignorance God winked at; but now commandeth all men everywhere to repent:17:30

Acts 17:31 Because he hath appointed a day, in the which he will judge the world in righteousness by that man whom he hath ordained; whereof he hath given assurance unto all men, in that he hath raised him from the dead.

b. There are sins of infirmity which are sins committed through the weakness of the flesh.

Romans 8:26

Rom Likewise the Spirit also helpeth our infirmities: for we know not what we should pray for as we ought: but the Spirit itself maketh intercession for us with groanings which cannot be uttered.8:26

c. There are sins of presumption (assuming,

assumption, supposing). For instance a person commits a sin knowing it is sin and assuming or supposing it will be all right with God after the sin has been confessed.

Psalm 19:13

Psa Keep back thy servant also from presumptuous sins; let them not have dominion over me: then shall I be upright, and I shall be innocent from the great transgression.19:13

d. There are sins of final obduracy (hard-heartedness).

Mark 3:29

Mark But he that shall blaspheme against the Holy Ghost hath never forgiveness, but is in danger of eternal damnation:3:29

Romans 2:5

Rom 2:5 But after thy hardness and impenitent heart treasurest up unto thyself wrath against the day of wrath and revelation of the righteous judgment of God;

3. Penalty which involves the pain or loss which is inflicted upon the sinner by the lawgiver in the vindication of his justice.

Galatians 6:7-8

Gal 6:7 Be not deceived; God is not mocked: for whatsoever a man soweth, that shall he also reap.

Gal 6:8 For he that soweth to his flesh shall of the flesh reap corruption; but he that soweth to the Spirit shall of the Spirit reap life everlasting.

III. The destiny of man.

A. All men regardless of whether they are believers or unbelievers are destined to die.

Hebrews 9:27

Heb And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment:9:27

1. Death is the suspension of the union between man's personality and his body. It is the dissolution of his body into its chemical elements which was included in the penalty of sin.

Genesis 2:17

Gen But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in

the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.2:17

Genesis 3:19

Gen In the sweat of thy face shalt thou eat bread, till thou return unto the ground; for out of it wast thou taken: for dust thou art, and unto dust shalt thou return.3:19

Romans 5:12-14

Rom Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned:5:12

Rom (For until the law sin was in the world: but sin is not imputed when there is no law.5:13

Rom Nevertheless death reigned from Adam to Moses, even over them that had not sinned after the similitude of Adam's transgression, who is the figure of him that was to come.5:14

2. The human personality will have existence after death.

Job 19:26-27

Job And though after my skin worms destroy this body, yet in my flesh shall I see God:19:26

Job Whom I shall see for myself, and mine eyes shall behold, and not another; though my reins be consumed within me.19:27

Psalm 17:15

Psa As for me, I will behold thy face in righteousness: I shall be satisfied, when I awake, with thy likeness.17:15

Luke 23:43

Luke And Jesus said unto him, Verily I say unto thee, To day shalt thou be with me in paradise.23:43

2 Corinthians 5:6-8

2 Cor 5:6 Therefore we are always confident, knowing that, whilst we are at home in the body, we are absent from the Lord:

2 Cor 5:7 (For we walk by faith, not by sight:)

2 Cor 5:8 We are confident, I say, and willing rather to be absent from the body, and to be present with the Lord.

3. The condition of the human personality after death.

a. It is apart from the physical body.

1 Thessalonians 4:16-18

1 Th For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first:4:16

1 Th Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.4:17

1 Th Wherefore comfort one another with these words.4:18

b. It resides in an intermediary body.

2 Corinthians 5:1

2 Cor 5:1 For we know that if our earthly house of this tabernacle were dissolved, we have a building of God, an house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens.

c. It is in a state of consciousness.

2 Corinthians 5:1-8

2 Cor 5:1 For we know that if our earthly house of this tabernacle were dissolved, we have a building of God, an house not made with hands, eternal in the heavens.

2 Cor 5:2 For in this we groan, earnestly desiring to be clothed upon with our house which is from heaven:

2 Cor 5:3 If so be that being clothed we shall not be found naked.

2 Cor 5:4 For we that are in this tabernacle do groan, being burdened: not for that we would be unclothed, but clothed upon, that mortality might be swallowed up of life.

2 Cor 5:5 Now he that hath wrought us for the selfsame thing is God, who also hath given unto us the earnest of the Spirit.

2 Cor 5:6 Therefore we are always confident, knowing that, whilst we are at home in the body, we are absent from the Lord:

2 Cor 5:7 (For we walk by faith, not by sight:)

2 Cor 5:8 We are confident, I say, and willing rather to be absent from the body, and to be present with the Lord.

Revelation 6:9-10

Rev 6:9 And when he had opened the fifth seal, I saw under the altar the souls of them that were slain for the word of God, and for the testimony which they held:

Rev 6:10 And they cried with a loud voice, saying, How long, O Lord, holy and true, dost thou not judge and avenge our blood on them that dwell on the earth?

4. The quality of life for both the believer and the unbeliever.

a. The believer will be in a state of blessedness.

Philippians 1:23

Phil For I am in a strait betwixt two, having a desire to depart, and to be with Christ; which is far better: 1:23

b. The unbeliever will be in a state of torment.

Luke 16:19-31

Read this passage from the Bible

1) Unbelievers will be in hell.

Luke 16:23

Luke And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments, and seeth Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom. 16:23

2) Unbelievers will be in torment.

Luke 16:23

Luke And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments, and seeth Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom. 16:23

3) Unbelievers will be able to look into heaven thereby adding to their torment.

Luke 16:23

Luke And in hell he lift up his eyes, being in torments, and seeth

Abraham afar off, and Lazarus in his bosom.16:23

- 4) Unbelievers will beg for mercy.

Luke 16:24

Luke 16:24 And he cried and said, Father Abraham, have mercy on me, and send Lazarus, that he may dip the tip of his finger in water, and cool my tongue; for I am tormented in this flame.

- 5) Unbelievers will be reminded of their past life.

Luke 16:25

Luke But Abraham said, Son, remember that thou in thy lifetime receivedst thy good things, and likewise Lazarus evil things: but now he is comforted, and thou art tormented.16:25

- 6) Unbelievers will be eternally confined to the agonies of hell by a great gulf which can not be crossed.

Luke 16:26

Luke And beside all this, between us and you there is a great gulf fixed: so that they which would pass from hence to you cannot; neither can they pass to us, that would come from thence.16:26

- 7) Unbelievers will be greatly concerned about their loved ones left behind on earth.

Luke 16:27-28

Luke Then he said, I pray thee therefore, father, that thou wouldest send him to my father's house:16:27

Luke For I have five brethren; that he may testify unto them, lest they also come into this place of torment.16:28

8) Unbelievers will continue to have erroneous concepts.

Luke 16:30

Luke And he said, Nay, father Abraham: but if one went unto them from the dead, they will repent.16:30

9) Unbelievers will be continually reminded that they rejected the method God choose to inform and teach men of their spiritual need.

Luke 16:29, 31

Luke Abraham saith unto him, They have Moses and the prophets; let them hear them.16:29

Luke And he said unto him, If they hear not Moses and the prophets, neither will they be persuaded, though one rose 16:31

B. All men regardless of whether they are believers or unbelievers are destined to judgment.

1. Believers have already been judged as to their sin.

a. The time of this judgment was 2000 years ago at the cross.

1 Peter 3:18

1 Pet For Christ also hath once suffered for sins, the just for the unjust, that he might bring us to God, being put to death in the flesh, but quickened by the Spirit:3:18

Hebrews 9:26

Heb For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.9:26

b. The place of this judgment was .Calvary

Galatians 3:13

Gen And the LORD God said unto the woman, What is this that thou hast done? And the woman said, The serpent beguiled me, and I did eat.3:13

c. The result of this judgment was death for Christ and life for the believer.

2 Corinthians 5:21

2 Cor For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.5:21

John 5:24

John 5:24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.

Romans 8:1-3

Rom 8:1 There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

Rom 8:2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

Rom 8:3 For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh:

2. Believer's will be judged as to their life. The believer is free from the condemnation of his sin but responsible for his walk.

a. The time of this judgment is during the lifetime of the believer.

Romans 14:13

Rom Let us not therefore judge one another any more: but judge this rather, that no man put a stumblingblock or an occasion to fall in his brother's way.14:13

b. The place of this judgment is any place the believer goes.

c. The result of this judgment is fellowship with God. When sins are confessed, the believer enjoys full forgiveness and cleansing.

1 Peter 3:12

1 Pet For the eyes of the Lord are over the righteous, and his ears are open unto their prayers: but the face of the Lord is against them that do evil.3:12
Psalm 24:3-4

Psa 24:3 Who shall ascend into the hill of the LORD? or who shall stand in his holy place?

Psa 24:4 He that hath clean hands, and a pure heart; who hath not lifted up his soul unto vanity, nor sworn deceitfully.

1 John 1:9

1 John 1:9 If we confess our sins, he is faithful and just to forgive us our sins, and to cleanse us from all unrighteousness.

3. Believer's will be judged as to their works. All believers must stand before Christ to give account for the things done in this body. This judgment has

nothing what-so-ever to do with salvation for salvation is God's free gift to repentant sinners.

a. The time for this judgment is at the second coming of Jesus to earth.

Revelation 22:12

And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be. Rev 22:12

b. The place of this judgment is the judgment seat of Christ.

2 Corinthians 5:10

2 Cor 5:10 For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad.

c. The result of this judgment will be reward or loss of rewards depending upon the faithfulness of the believer.

1 Corinthians 3:11-15

1 Cor For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ. 3:11

1 Cor 3:12 Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble;

1 Cor Every man's work shall be made manifest: for the day shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire; and the fire shall try every man's work of what sort it is. 3:13

1 Cor If any man's work abide which he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward. 3:14

1 Cor If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire. 3:15

4. There will be a judgment of the unbeliever.

a. The time of this judgment is at the end of the millennial.

Revelation 20:5

Rev 20:5 But the rest of the dead lived not again until the thousand years were finished. This is the first resurrection.

b. The place for this judgment will be the great white throne.

Revelation 20:11-13

Rev 20:11 And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them.

And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works. Rev 20:12

And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works. Rev 20:13

c. The result of this judgment will be the second death in the lake of fire involving eternal fire and damnation.

Revelation 20:14-15

And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death. Rev 20:14

And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire. Rev 20:15

Basic Christian Doctrine

PART FIVE

Deontology---The doctrine of moral obligation

I. The nature of God's law.

A. The circumstances surrounding the giving of the law on Mt. Sinai.

Exodus chapters 18 and 19.

An orderly system of rules and regulations by which a society is governed. In the Bible, particularly the Old Testament, a unique law code was established by direct revelation from God to direct His people in their worship, in their relationship to Him, and in their social relationships with one another.

The law comes from God, issues from His nature, and is holy, righteous, and good. Furthermore, at the outset of God's ruling over at Sinai, God the great King gave His laws. These laws were binding on His people, and He upheld them. Furthermore, His laws were universal. Ancient oriental kings often tried to outdo their predecessors in image, economic power, and political influence. This was often their motivation in setting forth law codes. God, however, depicts His law as an expression of His love for His people Ex. 19:5-6.

Biblical law is more than a record of human law. It is an expression of what God requires of man. It rests on the eternal moral principles that are consistent with the very nature of God Himself. Therefore, biblical law (the Ten Commandments) is the summary of moral law. As such it sets forth fundamental and universal moral principles.

1. God had just delivered the from Egyptian captivity.

Exodus 18:8

Exo 18:8 And Moses told his father in law all that the LORD had done unto Pharaoh and to the Egyptians for 's sake, and all the travail that had come upon them by the way, and how the LORD delivered them.

2. Moses had been doing all the judging of small and large matters that came up among the people.

Exodus 18:15-16

Exo And Moses said unto his father in law, Because the people come unto me to inquire of God:18:15

Exo 18:16 When they have a matter, they come unto me; and I judge between one and another, and I do make them know the statutes of God, and his laws.

3. God spoke to Moses and told him to sanctify the people, have them wash their clothes, and set bounds unto the people round about Sinai.

Exodus 19:10-12

Exo And the LORD said unto Moses, Go unto the people, and sanctify them to day and to morrow, and let them wash their clothes,19:10

Exo And be ready against the third day: for the third day the LORD will come down in the sight of all the people upon mount Sinai.19:11

Exo 19:12 And thou shalt set bounds unto the people round about, saying, Take heed to yourselves, that ye go not up into the mount, or touch the border of it: whosoever toucheth the mount shall be surely put to death:

4. God called Moses upon the mount and commanded him to return to the people at which time Aaron could go up on the mount with Moses.

Exodus 19:3

Exo 19:3 And Moses went up unto God, and the LORD called unto him out of the mountain, saying,

Thus shalt thou say to the house of Jacob, and tell the children of Israel;

Exodus 19:14

Exo And Moses went down from the mount unto the people, and sanctified the people; and they washed their clothes.19:14

Exodus 19:20

Exo And the LORD came down upon mount Sinai, on the top of the mount: and the LORD called Moses up to the top of the mount; and Moses went up.19:20

Exodus 19:24

Exo And the LORD said unto him, Away, get thee down, and thou shalt come up, thou, and Aaron with thee: but let not the priests and the people break through to come up unto the LORD, lest he break forth upon them.19:24

B. The law was given for the government of a people who were to be a peculiar treasure unto God.

1. The tablets were deposited in the Ark of the Covenant where they remained through the 38 years of wandering. They were transported across Jordan, carried around the walls of Jericho, housed at Shiloh, captured by the Philistines, placed in the house of Abinadab and then to David. Finally they were placed in Solomon's where they remained until the temple was plundered by Nebuchadnezzar.

2. The ten commandments furnish man with the greatest code of morals that the world has ever known. The principles of every commandment was restated in the New Testament.

The first commandment	Ex 20:2-3	Matt 22:37-39
The second	“ Ex 20:4-6	John 4:24
The third	“ Ex 20:7	Matt -375:33
The fourth	“ Ex 20:8-11	Mark -282:27
The fifth	“ Ex	Matt 15:3-620:12
The sixth	“ Ex	Matt -2220:135:21

	The seventh	"	Ex	Matt
-2820:145:27				
	The eighth	"	Ex	Mark 20:1510:19
	The ninth	"	Ex	Matt -3720:1612:35
	The tenth	"	Ex 20:17	Luke 12:15

3. The purpose for the law.

- a. It reveals the oneness and sovereignty of God.

Exodus 20:2

Exo 20:2 I am the LORD thy God, which have brought thee out of the , out of the house of bondage. of

- b. It was to place a restraint upon the sinner as a deterrent to sin.

Exodus 19:16-19

Exo 19:16 And it came to pass on the third day in the morning, that there were thunders and lightnings, and a thick cloud upon the mount, and the voice of the trumpet exceeding loud; so that all the people that was in the camp trembled.

Exo And Moses brought forth the people out of the camp to meet with God; and they stood at the nether part of the mount.19:17

Exo And mount Sinai was altogether on a smoke, because the LORD descended upon it in fire: and the smoke thereof ascended as the smoke of a furnace, and the whole mount quaked greatly.19:18

Exo 19:19 And when the voice of the trumpet sounded long, and waxed louder and louder, Moses spake, and God answered him by a voice.

- c. It was to show the sinner the reality and greatness of his sins.

Romans 3:19-20

Rom Now we know that what things soever the law saith, it saith to them who are under the law: that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before God.3:19

Rom Therefore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin.3:20

d. It leads or drives the sinner to Christ the Savior.

Galatians 3:24

Gal Wherefore the law was our schoolmaster to bring us unto Christ, that we might be justified by faith.3:24

II. The ten commandments proper.

A. The first commandment deals with man's duty to worship the one true God.

Exodus 20:2-3

Exo 20:2 I am the LORD thy God, which have brought thee out of the , out of the house of bondage. of

Exo 20:3 Thou shalt have no other gods before me.

1. It calls for the recognition of the Supreme Person.

a. God is supreme and is to be loved supremely.

Deuteronomy 6:5

Deu 6:5 And thou shalt love the LORD thy God with all thine heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy might.

b. God is supreme and is to be worshipped supremely and whole heartedly.

Exodus 34:14

Exo 34:14 For thou shalt worship no other god: for the LORD, whose name is Jealous, is a jealous God:

Psalm 29:2

Psa 29:2 Give unto the LORD the glory due unto his name; worship the LORD in the beauty of holiness.

c. God is supreme and unwaning faith is to be directed toward Him.

Hebrews 10:23

Heb Let us hold fast the profession of our faith without wavering; (for he is faithful that promised;);10:23

2. It calls for the personal choice of God.

Joshua 24:15

Josh 24:15 And if it seem evil unto you to serve the LORD, choose you this day whom ye will serve; whether the gods which your fathers served that were on the other side of the flood, or the gods of the Amorites, in whose land ye dwell: but as for me and my house, we will serve the LORD.

Exodus 32:26

Exo 32:26 Then Moses stood in the gate of the camp, and said, Who is on the LORD'S side? let him come unto me. And all the sons of Levi gathered themselves together unto him.

3. Areas in which the first commandment may be broken.

a.. By living for one's self.

1 Peter 2:24

1 Pet Who his own self bare our sins in his own body on the tree, that we, being dead to

sins, should live unto righteousness: by whose stripes ye were healed.2:24

- b. By making pleasure the goal of one's life.

Hebrews 11:25

Heb Choosing rather to suffer affliction with the people of God, than to enjoy the pleasures of sin for a season;11:25

- c. By living to eat and prosper in earthly things.

Philippians 3:10

Phil That I may know him, and the power of his resurrection, and the fellowship of his sufferings, being made conformable unto his death;3:10

- d. By being under the sway of carnal lust.

Romans 8:7

Rom 8:7 Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be.

- e. By the worship of mammon.

Matthew 6:24

Mat No man can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and mammon.6:24

- f. By the worshipping of saints, the virgin Mary, angels, birds, four footed beasts or things made by the hands of man.

Acts 17:22-30

Acts Then Paul stood in the midst of Mars' hill, and said, Ye men of , I

perceive that in all things ye are too superstitious.17:2
2

Acts For as I passed by, and beheld your devotions, I found an altar with this inscription, TO THE UNKNOWN GOD. Whom therefore ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you.17:23

Acts 17:24 God that made the world and all things therein, seeing that he is Lord of heaven and earth, dwelleth not in temples made with hands;

Acts Neither is worshipped with men's hands, as though he needed any thing, seeing he giveth to all life, and breath, and all things;17:25

Acts And hath made of one blood all nations of men for to dwell on all the face of the earth, and hath determined the times before appointed, and the bounds of their habitation;17:26

Acts That they should seek the Lord, if haply they might feel after him, and find him, though he be not far from every one of us:17:27

Acts For in him we live, and move, and have our being; as certain also of your own poets have said, For we are also his offspring.17:28

Acts 17:29 Forasmuch then as we are the offspring of God, we ought not to think that the Godhead is like unto gold, or silver, or stone, graven by art and man's device.

Acts And the times of this ignorance God winked at; but now commandeth all men everywhere to repent:17:30

B. The second commandment deals with the spirituality of worship.

Exodus 20:4-6

Exo 20:4 Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth:

Exo 20:5 Thou shalt not bow down thyself to them, nor serve them: for I the LORD thy God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children unto the third and fourth generation of them that hate me;

Exo 20:6 And showing mercy unto thousands of them that love me, and keep my commandments.

1. The spiritually of God.

God is Spirit. The second commandment is addressed to the prohibition of the use of material objects in worshipping Him.

John 4:24

John God is a Spirit: and they that worship him must worship him in spirit and in truth.4:24

2 Corinthians 4:18

2 Cor While we look not at the things which are seen, but at the things which are not seen: for the things which are seen are temporal; but the things which are not seen are eternal.4:18

2. The use of images or representations of God in worship are prohibited.

Deuteronomy 4:23

Deu Take heed unto yourselves, lest ye forget the covenant of the LORD your God, which he made with you, and make you a graven image, or the likeness of any thing, which the LORD thy God hath forbidden thee.4:23

Deuteronomy 5:8

Deu 5:8 Thou shalt not make thee any graven image, or any likeness of any thing that is in heaven above, or that is in the earth beneath, or that is in the waters beneath the earth:

3. Areas in which this commandment may be broken.

- a. Wearing crucifixes.
- b. Putting representations of angels on the dash of the car.
- c. Placing statues which represent the Father, Jesus or the Holy Spirit as means of representation of either of them.
- d. Bowing down to or giving reverence to anything made by the hand of man as a representation of God.
- e. Having pictures which cause one to think of God, Jesus or the Holy Spirit. There are no legitimate pictures of any in the God-head.

C. The third commandment takes into consideration the need for reverence for God.

Exodus 20:7

Exo 20:7 Thou shalt not take the name of the LORD thy God in vain; for the LORD

will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain.

This commandment may be broken in many areas of conduct.

1. Blasphemy which is primarily the intentional defiance of God.

Matthew 12:31

Mat Wherefore I say unto you, All manner of sin and blasphemy shall be forgiven unto men: but the blasphemy against the Holy Ghost shall not be forgiven unto men.1
2:31

2. Perjury which is the act of false swearing or lying under oath.

1 Timothy 1:9-10

1 Tim 1:9 Knowing this, that the law is not made for a righteous man, but for the lawless and disobedient, for

the ungodly and for sinners, for unholy and profane, for murderers of fathers and murderers of mothers, for manslayers,

1 Tim For whoremongers, for them that defile themselves with mankind, for menstealers, for liars, for perjured persons, and if there be any other thing that is contrary to sound doctrine; 1:10

3. Frivolity which involves joking or cursing using God's name.

Deuteronomy 5:11

Deu Thou shalt not take the name of the LORD thy God in vain: for the LORD will not hold him guiltless that taketh his name in vain. 5:11

4. Profanity which is commonly called swearing but more especially cursing.

2 Timothy 2:16

2 Tim But shun profane and vain babblings: for they will increase unto more ungodliness. 2:16

5. Irreverence as directed toward God's holy institutions such as the church, prayer and soul winning.

Failure to meet with the people of God at the place of God's choosing is irreverence.

Hebrews 10:25

Heb Not forsaking the assembling of ourselves together, as the manner of some is; but exhorting one another: and so much the more, as ye see the day approaching. 10:25

Failure to pray effectively and fervently is irreverence toward God.

James 5:16

James Confess your faults one to another, and pray one for another, that ye may be healed. The

effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much
.5:16

1 Thessalonians 5:17

1 Th Pray without ceasing.5:17

6. Hypocrisy which is having a form of godliness.

2 Timothy 3:5

2 Tim 3:5 Having a form of godliness, but denying the power thereof: from such
turn away.

D. The fourth commandment involves respect of God by giving
Him the day He has chosen to be worshipped.

1. The meaning of the term “sabbath” is rest, cessation
from action.

2. History of the sabbath which was instituted in .
Not much is said about it from to Sinai. At Sinai the sabbath took on a more
pronounced significance.

Genesis 8:10:12

Gen And he stayed yet other seven days; and again he sent forth the dove out of the
ark;8:10

Gen And the dove came in to him in the evening; and, lo, in her mouth was an olive
leaf plucked off: so Noah knew that the waters were abated from off the earth.8:11

Gen And he stayed yet other seven days; and sent forth the dove; which returned
not again unto him any more.8:12

Exodus 16:22-26

Exo And it came to pass, that on the sixth day they gathered twice as much bread,
two omers for one man: and all the rulers of the congregation came and told Moses.1
6:22

Exo 16:23 And he said unto them, This is that which the LORD hath said, To morrow is the rest of the holy sabbath unto the LORD: bake that which ye will bake to day, and seethe that ye will seethe; and that which remaineth over lay up for you to be kept until the morning.

Exo And they laid it up till the morning, as Moses bade: and it did not stink, neither was there any worm therein. 16:24

Exo And Moses said, Eat that to day; for to day is a sabbath unto the LORD: to day ye shall not find it in the field. 16:25

Exo Six days ye shall gather it; but on the seventh day, which is the sabbath, in it there shall be none. 16:26

3. The significance of the Sabbath.

a. It commemorates the works of creation.

Genesis 2:3

Gen 2:3 And God blessed the seventh day, and sanctified it: because that in it he had rested from all his work which God created and made.

Exodus 20:11

Exo 20:11 For in six days the LORD made heaven and earth, the sea, and all that in them is, and rested the seventh day: wherefore the LORD blessed the sabbath day, and hallowed it.

b. It kept alive the knowledge of the true God.

Deuteronomy 5:15

Deu And remember that thou wast a servant in the , and that the LORD thy God brought thee out thence through a mighty hand and by a stretched out arm: therefore the LORD thy God commanded thee to keep the sabbath day. 5:15

c. It is to be kept in anticipation of the greater sabbath.

Hebrews 4:9-10

Heb 4:9 There remaineth therefore a rest to the people of God.

Heb For he that is entered into his rest, he also hath ceased from his own works, as God did from his. 4:10

Psalms 95:11

Psa 95:11 Unto whom I swear in my wrath that they should not enter into my rest.

d. It was a sign of the covenant between and
God.

Deuteronomy 5:12-15

Deu Keep the sabbath day to sanctify it, as the LORD thy God hath commanded thee.5:12

Deu Six days thou shalt labour, and do all thy work:5:13

Deu 5:14 But the seventh day is the sabbath of the LORD thy God: in it thou shalt not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, nor thy manservant, nor thy maidservant, nor thine ox, nor thine ass, nor any of thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is within thy gates; that thy manservant and thy maidservant may rest as well as thou.

Deu And remember that thou wast a servant in the , and that the LORD thy God brought thee out thence through a mighty hand and by a stretched out arm: therefore the LORD thy God commanded thee to keep the sabbath day.5:15 of

Exodus 31:13

Exo 31:13 Speak thou also unto the children of , saying,
Verily my sabbaths ye shall keep: for it is a sign between me and you throughout
your generations; that ye may know that I am the LORD that doth sanctify you.

e. It was designed for the well being of man.

Mark 2:27

Mark And he said unto them, The sabbath was made for man, and not man for the
sabbath:2:27

4. The objectives of the fourth commandment.

a. Rest from labor.

Leviticus 23:3

Lev 23:3 Six days shall work be done: but the seventh day is the sabbath of rest, an
holy convocation; ye shall do no work therein: it is the sabbath of the LORD in all
your dwellings.

b. Remembrance of God.

Deuteronomy 5:12

Deu Keep the sabbath day to sanctify it, as the LORD thy God hath commanded
thee.5:12

Deuteronomy 5:14

Deu 5:14 But the seventh day is the sabbath of the LORD thy God: in it thou shalt
not do any work, thou, nor thy son, nor thy daughter, nor thy manservant, nor thy
maidservant, nor thine ox, nor thine ass, nor any of thy cattle, nor thy stranger that is
within thy gates; that thy manservant and thy maidservant may rest as well as thou.

5. Areas in which this commandment may be broken. The
Christian sabbath has replaced the Old Testament sabbath but the Christian sabbath
is to be holy unto the

Lord. The Lord's day may be desecrated in many ways.

a. By failure to give God honor and glory in the church.

Ephesians 3:21

Eph Unto him be glory in the church by Christ Jesus throughout all ages, world without end. Amen.3:21

b. By engaging in labor which keeps one from fellowship with other saints and out of the house of God.

Exodus 20:9

Exo 20:9 Six days shalt thou labour, and do all thy work:

Deuteronomy 5:13

Deu Six days thou shalt labour, and do all thy work:5:13

c. By engaging in the pleasures of the world rather than the pleasures of God. This includes amusement parks, ball games, sports of any type, fishing, hunting. Anything that takes the person away from giving to God what is due Him as related to worship, exhortation of the saints and hearing the preaching and teaching of the Word of God.

Matthew 6:33-24

Mat But if thine eye be evil, thy whole body shall be full of darkness. If therefore the light that is in thee be darkness, how great is that darkness!6:23

Mat No man can serve two masters: for either he will hate the one, and love the other; or else he will hold to the one, and despise the other. Ye cannot serve God and mammon.6:24

Deuteronomy 10:12

Deu 10:12 And now, Israel, what doth the LORD thy God require of thee, but to fear the LORD thy God, to walk in all his ways, and to love him, and to serve the LORD thy God with all thy heart and with all thy soul,

Micah 6:8

Micah 6:8 He hath showed thee, O man, what is good; and what doth the LORD require of thee, but to do justly, and to love mercy, and to walk humbly with thy God?

E. The fifth commandment is related to the proper treatment of

parents.

Exodus 20:12

Exo Honour thy father and thy mother: that thy days may be long upon the land which the LORD thy God giveth thee.20:12

1. This commandment imposes certain obligations upon children.

a. It involves reverence for the parents.

Leviticus 19:32

Lev Thou shalt rise up before the hoary head, and honour the face of the old man, and fear thy God: I am the LORD.19:32

b. It involves honor for the parents.

Matthew 19:19

Mat Honour thy father and thy mother: and, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself.19:19

c. It involves obedience to the parents.

Ephesians 6:1

Eph 6:1 Children, obey your parents in the Lord: for this is right.

Colossians 3:20

Children, obey your parents in all things: for this is well pleasing unto the Lord.3:20

d. It involves financial support of the parents in old age.

1 Timothy 5:4

1 Tim 5:4 But if any widow have children or nephews, let them learn first to show piety at home, and to requite their parents: for that is good and acceptable before God.

2. There are promises made as to obedience to this commandment.

a. There is the promise of long life on the earth.

Exodus 20:12

Exo Honour thy father and thy mother: that thy days may be long upon the land which the LORD thy God giveth thee.20:12

b. There is the promise of it being well with the children.

Ephesians 6:1-3

Eph 6:1 Children, obey your parents in the Lord: for this is right.

Eph 6:2 Honour thy father and mother; which is the first commandment with promise;

Eph 6:3 That it may be well with thee, and thou mayest live long on the earth.

3. Areas in which this commandment may be broken.

a. By showing disrespect to parents.

b. By living lives that are a reproach to parents.

c. By disobedience to parents.

d. By non-support for parents in their need.

F. The sixth commandment involves the sanctity of human life. This commandment, which is general, prohibits murder of every kind.

Exodus 20:13

Exo Thou shalt not kill.20:13

1. General considerations relative to the obligations of this commandment.

a. All lawful efforts to preserve our own lives and the lives of others should be made.

b. Every evil thought and passion desiring terminal harm upon another person should be overcome.

c. Overindulgence as related to the use of food and drink that leads to death must be avoided.

d. Committing to becoming overworked leading to anxiety, stress, heart attack and other health related problems leading to death is to be avoided.

2. Areas in which this commandment may be broken.

a. Actions by which the lives of our fellow beings may be taken is sin against God.

b. Wars for the purpose of extending territorial boundaries, enhancing greater commerce and benefiting anyone driven by greed.

c. Laws by which the lives of people may be taken away for offences of comparatively trifling offences.

d. Bad dispositions which lead people to wish evil to or meditate mischief against one another such as hating your brother is a murderer.

e. Lack of charity to the helpless and distressed

leading to the death of the one in need is in the sight of God a murderer. He who neglects to save life is, according to an incontrovertible maxim in law, the SAME as he who takes it away.

f. Riot, excess, drunkenness, gluttony, inactivity, slothfulness and all superstitious mortification's and self-denials by which life is destroyed or shortened are sins against the sixth commandment.

G. The seventh commandment is related to immorality as it regards matters of sexual conduct between married people.

Exodus 20:14

Exo Thou shalt not commit adultery.20:14

1. The sin of adultery is a far reaching sin.

a. It is a sin against the body.

1 Corinthians 6:18

1 Cor Flee fornication. Every sin that a man doeth is without the body; but he that committeth fornication sinneth against his own body.6:18

b. It is a sin against the soul.

Proverbs 6:32

Prov But whoso committeth adultery with a woman lacketh understanding: he that doeth it destroyeth his own soul.6:32

c. It is a sin against the family.

Matthew 19:9

Mat 19:9 And I say unto you, Whosoever shall put away his wife, except it be for fornication, and shall marry another, committeth adultery: and whoso marrieth her which is put away doth commit adultery.

- e. It is a sin against the indwelling Spirit.

Leviticus 20:7

Lev 20:7 Sanctify yourselves therefore, and be ye holy: for I am the LORD your God.

Ephesians 4:30

Eph And grieve not the holy Spirit of God, whereby ye are sealed unto the day of redemption.4:30

- f. It is a sin against mankind.

Genesis 2:24

Gen Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh.2:24

Romans 12:9

Rom 12:9 Let love be without dissimulation. Abhor that which is evil; cleave to that which is good.

2. Duties connected to this commandment.

- a. Chastity in mind and affection.

Matthew 5:27-28

Mat Ye have heard that it was said by them of old time, Thou shalt not commit adultery:5:27

Mat But I say unto you, That whosoever looketh on a woman to lust after her hath committed adultery with her already in his heart.5:28

- b. Chastity in words and conversation.

2 Timothy 2:16

2 Tim But shun profane and vain babblings: for they will increase unto more ungodliness.2:16

- c. Shunning all occasions which suggest impurity.

1 Thessalonians 5:22

1 Th Abstain from all appearance of evil.5:22

- 3. Areas in which this commandment may be broken.

- a. Married individuals having a sexual relationship with another married person.

- b. Generally speaking the word adultery carries the idea of committing any impurity.

H. The eighth commandment has to do with possessions belonging to another.

Exodus 20:15

Exo Thou shalt not steal.20:15

- 1. Implications involved in this commandment.

- a. It recognizes the right of human possessions.

- b. It sets the standard for the means of acquiring possessions.

- c. It determines possessions are to be gained in an honorable manner.

- d. It deplores the acquisition of possessions through dishonesty.

2. The commandment addresses as well the stealing of one's good name by marring character or reputation.

It has been supposed that under the eighth commandment, injuries done to character, the depriving a man of his reputation or good name, are included, hence, those words of one of our poets:

(from Adam Clarke Commentary)

3. Areas in which this commandment may be broken.

a. By the actual taking of that which belongs to another.

b. Robbing ourselves of what we have through sinful spending. Buying Playboys, renting X rated movies, gambling at casino's and the like. Anything that reduces what God has given us in a sinful manner is sin against God.

c. By extortion, blackmail or any other means of taking from another what is rightfully his.

d. By an employer defrauding an employee or an employee defrauding an employer.

e. By borrowing and not returning whether it be a garden rake or money.

f. By going into debt when one knows he can not pay the debt.

g. By taking advantage of a buyer's or seller's ignorance. How many times have we made a brag about getting something for much less than it value due to someone's ignorance of the real value.

h. By using false weights and measures.

I. The ninth commandment requires faithful dealings with our fellowman, maintaining an honest relationship and treating him as we would expect to be treated.

Exodus 20:16

Exo Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour.20:16

Zechariah 8:16

Zec These are the things that ye shall do; Speak ye every man the truth to his neighbour; execute the judgment of truth and peace in your gates:8:16

1. Consider a quote from Adam Clark's commentary.

"Not only false oaths, to deprive a man of his life or of his right, are here prohibited, but all whispering, tale-bearing, slander, and calumny; in a word, whatever is deposed as a truth, which is false in fact, and tends to injure another in his goods, person, or character, is against the spirit and letter of this law. Suppressing the truth when known, by which a person may be defrauded of his property or his good name, or lie under injuries or disabilities which a discovery of the truth would have prevented, is also a crime against this law. He who bears a false testimony against or belies even the devil himself, comes under the curse of this law, because his testimony is false. By the term "neighbour" any human being is intended, whether he rank among our enemies or friends.

(from Adam Clarke Commentary)

2. Areas in which this commandment may be broken.

- a. By actual lying.
- b. By committing perjury.
- c. By a slanderous tongue.
- d. By being a tale-bearer.
- e. By creating a false impression or making a misrepresentation.
 - f. By withholding the truth or a part of the truth.
 - g. By perverting the meaning of a statement.

i. By flattery in order to defraud.

J. The tenth commandment involves the desire of the mind and heart as it relates to what another person owns or possesses. The primary thought of the tenth commandment centers in the word covet. This sin emerges when there is a desire to want that which belongs to another.

Exodus 20:17

Exo Thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's house, thou shalt not covet thy neighbour's wife, nor his manservant, nor his maidservant, nor his ox, nor his ass, nor any thing that is thy neighbour's.20:17

1. Implications associated with the tenth commandment.

a. It gives consideration to the carnal nature of man desiring that which he does not have.

b. It shows the universality of the sin nature. Men and women around the world are caught up in wanting what another has.

c. It gives Satan an opportunity to attack in an area of weakness.

d. It implies the desire or longing after in order to enjoy as a property the person or thing coveted.

e. It is a common failure including the youngest and the oldest, the male and the female, every tribe and race of man on earth.

f. It implies discontent at with one's lot in life.

g. It denotes envy of that which our neighbor has.

h. It suggests irregular appetites and desires for that which belongs to another.

i. It speaks to have an inordinate desire of having that which will be a gratification to self.

j. It renders one guilty of the sin of lust for that when one does not have.

2. Areas in which this commandment may be broken.

a. Wishing to have another's house. Seen in the expression "I wish I had his house or had a house like his."

b. Wishing to have another man's wife Seen in the expression "I wish I had his wife."

c. Wishing to have another's estate. Seen in expressions such as "I wish I had some of that land he owns." "I would love to have half of what he has." "Why does he have so much and I have so little."

d. Wishing to have possession of anything belonging to another. Seen in the expression such as "I wish I had a car like his." "I wish I had a tractor like his." "I wish I had, I wish I had, I wish I had."

3. As Matthew Henry said, "God give us all to see our face in the glass of this law, and to lay our hearts under the government of it!"

Basic Christian Doctrine

PART SIX

Soteriology---The Doctrine of Salvation

Soteriology is that branch of theology dealing with the salvation accomplished by and through Jesus Christ. It includes the grace of God which is the source of salvation, the covenant relationships involved in salvation, the plan of God as it relates to salvation, the person and work of Jesus Christ and the application of God's righteousness which was and is objectively worked out by Jesus Christ for the sinner by the Holy Spirit in the actual salvation of man.

I. The grace of God as the source of salvation.

A. The word "grace" is used in several senses in the Word of God with the primary usage signifying the free favor of God (unmerited favor).

Ephesians 2:7-8

Eph 2:7 That in the ages to come he might show the exceeding riches of his grace in his kindness toward us through Christ Jesus.

Eph 2:8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God:

Titus 2:11

Titus For the grace of God that bringeth salvation hath appeared to all men, 2:11

B. Grace goes hand in hand with righteousness.

Romans 5:17

Rom For if by one man's offence death reigned by one; much more they which receive abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness shall reign in life by one, Jesus Christ.) 5:17

Romans 5:21

Rom That as sin hath reigned unto death, even so might grace reign through righteousness unto eternal life by Jesus Christ our Lord. 5:21

C. The fullness of God's grace was and is manifested in Jesus Christ.

John 1:17

John For the law was given by Moses, but grace and truth came by Jesus Christ. 1:17

D. Grace is the work of the entire God-head (Trinity).

2 Corinthians 5:19

2 Cor 5:19 To wit, that God was in Christ, reconciling the world unto himself, not imputing their trespasses unto them; and hath committed unto us the word of reconciliation.

II. The covenant relationship between God, Jesus Christ and the people of God.

A covenant is a mutual contract between two or more parties.

Biblical examples of covenants.

- Abraham and Abimelech.

-
-

Genesis 21:25-27

-
-

Gen
And Abraham reph

servants had violently taken away.21:25

-
-

Gen
And Abimelech s

neither yet heard I of it, but to day.21:26

-
-

Gen
And Abraham to

them made a covenant.21:27

- Joshua and the people of Israel.

•

•

•

•

Joshua 24:24-25

•

•

Josh 24:24 Ar

his voice will we obey.

•

•

Josh 24:25 So

statute and an ordinance in Shechem.

•

- God and Abraham.

Genesis 15:18

Gen 15:18 In the same day the LORD made a covenant with Abram, saying, Unto thy seed have I given this land, from the river of Egypt unto the great river, the river Euphrates:

Genesis 18:12-14

Gen 18:12 Therefore Sarah laughed within herself, saying, After I am waxed old shall I have pleasure, my lord being old also?

Gen 18:13 And the LORD said unto Abraham, Wherefore did Sarah laugh, saying, Shall I of a surety bear a child, which am old?

Gen Is any thing too hard for the LORD? At the time appointed I will return unto thee, according to the time of life, and Sarah shall have a son.18:14

A. The covenant between the Father and Son is called the covenant of redemption.

The covenant of redemption pertains to the salvation of man involving the combined activities of the Triune God particularly that of the Father and the Son; however, the Holy Spirit is a very important participant in the work of salvation.

Psalm 89:27-37

Read from the Bible.

1. Jesus came to do the will of the Father.
Hebrews 10:7

Heb 10:7 Then said I, Lo, I come (in the volume of the book it is written of me,) to do thy will, O God.

Matthew 26:39

Mat 26:39 And he went a little farther, and fell on his face, and prayed, saying, O my Father, if it be possible, let this cup pass from me: nevertheless not as I will, but as thou wilt.

2. Jesus glorified the Father on earth.

John 17:4

John 17:4 I have glorified thee on the earth: I have finished the work which thou gavest me to do.

3. Jesus is the executor of redemption for man.

a. He became human by being born of the virgin.

Galatians 4:4

Gal 4:4 But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law,

b. He placed Himself under the law to fulfill it of His own volition (will).

Philippians 2:8

Phil 2:8 And being found in fashion as a man, he humbled himself, and became obedient unto death, even the death of the cross.

Romans 8:3

Rom 8:3 For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh:

Colossians 2:14

Col 2:14 Blotting out the handwriting of ordinances that was against us, which was

contrary to us, and took it out of the way, nailing it to his cross;

c. He came to bear man's sin.

Isaiah 53:5-8

Isa 53:5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

Isa 53:6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

Isa 53:7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he openeth not his mouth.

Isa 53:8 He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken.

B. The covenant of grace is enacted at the moment a person received Jesus Christ as his Savior.

1. What God does in this covenant.

a. He changes the nature of the sinner.

b. He forgives all sin.

c. He restores to fellowship.

d. He sanctifies (sets apart to a holy service and makes holy).

e. He secures the repentant sinner eternally.

f. He adopts the sinner into His own family.

g. He does all the necessary work required to make

a child of the devil His own child leaving nothing undone.

h. He makes Jesus the mediator between Him and His children.

i. He promises to be their God and them His people.

2. What the repentant sinner does in this covenant.

a. He surrenders his degraded will to the will of God.

b. He renounces the call of the world.

c. He recognizes the right of God to the ownership of his life.

d. He honors, glorifies, praises and worships God making nothing to be of more importance than doing the pleasure of God.

e. He commits himself to faithfulness in regard to the gift he has received from God.

f. He becomes a witness to others of the saving work of God.

g. He places himself under voluntary slavery to God.

h. He endeavors to do nothing which will dishonor God.

i. He is more concerned about faithfulness to God than he is to any area of his life.

III. The Biblical plan of salvation.

A. Recognize the fact that you are a sinner.

1. There is none good.

Psalm 14:3

Psa 14:3 They are all gone aside, they are all together become filthy: there is none that doeth good, no, not one.

Romans 3:12

Rom 3:12 They are all gone out of the way, they are together become unprofitable; there is none that doeth good, no, not one.

2. Adam's sin passed upon all men.

Romans 5:12

Rom Wherefore, as by one man sin entered into the world, and death by sin; and so death passed upon all men, for that all have sinned:5:12

1 Corinthians 15:21-22

1 Cor For since by man came death, by man came also the resurrection of the dead.15:21

1 Cor For as in Adam all die, even so in Christ shall all be made alive.15:22

3. Every unbeliever is a sinner by nature.

Ephesians 2:3-5

Eph 2:3 Among whom also we all had our conversation in times past in the lusts of our flesh, fulfilling the desires of the flesh and of the mind; and were by nature the children of wrath, even as others.

Eph 2:4 But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us,

Eph 2:5 Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;)

- B. Realize that you can not save yourself.

1. Your righteousness is not enough.

Isaiah 64:6

Isa 64:6 But we are all as an unclean thing, and all our righteousnesses are as filthy rags; and we all do fade as a leaf; and our iniquities, like the wind, have taken us away.

2. You can not do enough work to merit salvation.

Galatians 2:16

Gal 2:16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the

faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.

Ephesians 2:8-9

Eph 2:8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God:

Eph 2:9 Not of works, lest any man should boast.

Titus 3:5

Titus 3:5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost;

3. Man at his best is in a wretched state before God.

Rom O wretched man that I am! who shall deliver me from the body of this death?⁷:
24

C. Understand the truth that God loves you.

1. God loves the sinner though he is the enemy of God.

Romans 5:10

Rom For if, when we were enemies, we were reconciled to God by the death of his Son, much more, being reconciled, we shall be saved by his life.^{5:10}

2. God loves the sinner even though he is a sinner.

Romans 5:8

Rom 5:8 But God commandeth his love toward us, in that, while we were yet sinners, Christ died for us.

3. God loved the sinner enough to allow His only begotten Son to die for him.

John 3:16-18

John For God so loved the world, that he gave his only begotten Son, that whosoever believeth in him should not perish, but have everlasting life.3:16

John For God sent not his Son into the world to condemn the world; but that the world through him might be saved.3:17

John He that believeth on him is not condemned: but he that believeth not is condemned already, because he hath not believed in the name of the only begotten Son of God.3:18

D. Accept the fact that Jesus came from heaven to become the Savior of all who would believe.

1. Jesus was with the Father before man was created.

Genesis 1:26-27

Gen And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.1:26

Gen So God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them.1:27

John 1:1-3

John 1:1 In the beginning was the Word, and the Word was with God, and the Word was God.

John 1:2 The same was in the beginning with God.

John 1:3 All things were made by him; and without him was not any thing made that was made.

2. The Father knew His Son would come to earth before

man was created.

Ephesians 1:3-7

Eph 1:3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places in Christ:

Eph 1:4 According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love:

Eph 1:5 Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will,

Eph 1:6 To the praise of the glory of his grace, wherein he hath made us accepted in the beloved.

Eph 1:7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;

3. Jesus came to earth to become the Savior of sinners.

Matthew 1:21-23

Mat And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name JESUS: for he shall save his people from their sins.1:21

Mat Now all this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying,1:22

Mat Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.1:23

E. Accept the fact that Jesus died on the cross for you personally.

1. Jesus died for the sins of the whole world.

1 John 2:1-2

1 John 2:1 My little children, these things write I unto you, that ye sin not. And if any man sin, we have an advocate with the Father, Jesus Christ the righteous:

1 John 2:2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world.

2. Jesus died for the sins of “whosoever will come unto Him.”

Matthew 10:32-33

Mat Whosoever therefore shall confess me before men, him will I confess also before my Father which is in heaven. 10:32

Mat But whosoever shall deny me before men, him will I also deny before my Father which is in heaven. 10:33

3. Jesus died for you personally and individually.

Revelation 22:17

And the Spirit and the bride say, Come. And let him that heareth say, Come. And let him that is athirst come. And whosoever will, let him take the water of life freely.
Rev 22:17

F. Believe that Jesus was actually buried.

1. His burial was prophesied in the Old Testament.

Isaiah 53:3-11

Isa 53:3 He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief: and we hid as it

were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed him not.

Isa 53:4 Surely he hath borne our griefs, and carried our sorrows: yet we did esteem him stricken, smitten of God, and afflicted.

Isa 53:5 But he was wounded for our transgressions, he was bruised for our iniquities: the chastisement of our peace was upon him; and with his stripes we are healed.

Isa 53:6 All we like sheep have gone astray; we have turned every one to his own way; and the LORD hath laid on him the iniquity of us all.

Isa 53:7 He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth: he is brought as a lamb to the slaughter, and as a sheep before her shearers is dumb, so he opened not his mouth.

Isa 53:8 He was taken from prison and from judgment: and who shall declare his generation? for he was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken.

Isa 53:9 And he made his grave with the wicked, and with the rich in his death; because he had done no violence, neither was any deceit in his mouth.

Isa 53:10 Yet it pleased the LORD to bruise him; he hath put him to grief: when thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed, he shall prolong his days, and the pleasure of the LORD shall prosper in his hand.

2. His burial was a New Testament reality.

Mark 15:42-46

Mark And now when the even was come, because it was the preparation, that is, the day before the sabbath, 15:42

Mark 15:43 Joseph of Arimathea, an honorable counsellor, which also waited for the kingdom of God, came, and went in boldly unto Pilate, and craved the body of Jesus.

Mark And Pilate marvelled if he were already dead: and calling unto him the centurion, he asked him whether he had been any while dead. 15:44

Mark And when he knew it of the centurion, he gave the body to Joseph. 15:45

Mark 15:46 And he bought fine linen, and took him down, and wrapped him in the linen, and laid him in a sepulchre which was hewn out of a rock, and rolled a stone unto the door of the sepulchre.

3. His burial was overcome with the resurrection.

Romans 6:4-5

Rom 6:4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

Rom 6:5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection:

G. Acknowledge through faith that God raised Jesus from the dead.

1. God the Father is said to have raised Jesus from the dead.

Acts 13:30

Acts But God raised him from the dead: 13:30

2. The Holy Spirit is said to have raised Jesus from the dead.

Romans 8:11

Rom 8:11 But if the Spirit of him that raised up Jesus from the dead dwell in you, he that raised up Christ from the dead shall also quicken your mortal bodies by his Spirit that dwelleth in you.

3. Many infallible witnesses verify the resurrection of Jesus from the dead.

1 Corinthians 15:1-8

1 Cor 15:1 Moreover, brethren, I declare unto you the gospel which I preached unto you, which also ye have received, and wherein ye stand;

1 Cor 15:2 By which also ye are saved, if ye keep in memory what I preached unto you, unless ye have believed in vain.

1 Cor 15:3 For I delivered unto you first of all that which I also received, how that Christ died for our sins according to the scriptures;

1 Cor 15:4 And that he was buried, and that he rose again the third day according to the scriptures:

1 Cor 15:5 And that he was seen of Cephas, then of the twelve:

1 Cor 15:6 After that, he was seen of above five hundred brethren at once; of whom the greater part remain unto this present, but some are fallen asleep.

1 Cor 15:7 After that, he was seen of James; then of all the apostles.

1 Cor 15:8 And last of all he was seen of me also, as of one born out of due time.

H. Make repentance unto God for being a sinner, confess Jesus as your personal Savior and believe in your heart that God raised Him from the dead.

1. In order to be saved, one must repent of sin.

Acts 20:20-21

Acts And how I kept back nothing that was profitable unto you, but have showed you, and have taught you publicly, and from house to house, 20:20

Acts Testifying both to the Jews, and also to the Greeks, repentance toward God, and faith toward our Lord Jesus Christ.20:21

2. In order to be saved, one must confess Jesus as Savior, Lord and Master.

Romans 10:9

Rom 10:9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.

1 John 4:15

1 John Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him, and he in God.4:15

3. In order to be saved, one must believe in their heart that God raised Jesus from the dead.

Romans 10:10-13

Rom For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.10:10

Rom For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.10:11

Rom For there is no difference between the Jew and the Greek: for the same Lord over all is rich unto all that call upon him.10:12

Rom For whosoever shall call upon the name of the Lord shall be saved.10:13

I. Accept the promise of God to save you once you have repented, confessed and believed.

1. God the Father has promised salvation through Christ.

Titus 1:1-3

Titus 1:1 Paul, a servant of God, and an apostle of Jesus Christ, according to the faith of God's elect, and the acknowledging of the truth which is after godliness;

Titus 1:2 In hope of eternal life, which God, that cannot lie, promised before the world began;

Titus 1:3 But hath in due times manifested his word through preaching, which is committed unto me according to the commandment of God our Saviour;

2. Jesus Christ has promised salvation to all coming to Him.

John 6:37-40

John All that the Father giveth me shall come to me; and him that cometh to me I will in no wise cast out.6:37

John For I came down from heaven, not to do mine own will, but the will of him that sent me.6:38

John 6:39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.

John And this is the will of him that sent me, that every one which seeth the Son, and believeth on him, may have everlasting life: and I will raise him up at the last day.6:40

3. The Holy Spirit testifies of salvation which is through Jesus Christ.

John 15:26

John But when the Comforter is come, whom I will send unto you from the Father, even the Spirit of truth, which proceedeth from the Father, he shall testify of me:15:26

J. Once you have received Jesus Christ as personal Savior, follow the Lord in scriptural baptism and unite with the church in order that you may learn of the Lord, grow in grace and knowledge of the Lord, develop and grow spiritually,

become a servant unto the Lord and go out to win others to Jesus Christ giving glory to God.

1. Follow the Lord in baptism.

Matthew 28:19

Mat 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

2. Unite with the church.

Matthew 5:14-16

Mat Ye are the light of the world. A city that is set on an hill cannot be hid.5:14

Mat Neither do men light a candle, and put it under a bushel, but on a candlestick; and it giveth light unto all that are in the house.5:15

Mat Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven.5:16

3. Grow in grace and knowledge of the Lord.

2 Peter 3:18

2 Pet But grow in grace, and in the knowledge of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ. To him be glory both now and for ever. Amen.3:18

4. Develop and grow spiritually.

Ephesians 4:11-15

Eph And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers;4:11

Eph For the perfecting of the saints for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ:4:12

Eph Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ:4:13

Eph 4:14 That we henceforth be no more children, tossed to and fro, and carried about with every wind of doctrine, by the sleight of men, and cunning craftiness, whereby they lie in wait to deceive;

Eph But speaking the truth in love, may grow up into him in all things, which is the head, even Christ:4:15

5. Become a servant unto the Lord.

Psalm 100:2

Psa 100:2 Serve the LORD with gladness: come before his presence with singing.

Colossians 3:23-24

And whatsoever ye do, do it heartily, as to the Lord, and not unto men;3:23

Knowing that of the Lord ye shall receive the reward of the inheritance: for ye serve the Lord Christ.3:24

6. Go out and win others to Jesus.

Acts 1:8

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in , and in all , and in , and unto the uttermost part of the earth.Judaea

Proverbs 11:30

Prov The fruit of the righteous is a tree of life; and he that winneth souls is wise.11:30

IV. The place of the plan of salvation in the Scriptures.

Full provision for salvation was made in the counsels of eternity. The plan of salvation is the very structure of both the Old and New

Testaments so much so that it is embedded in the Scriptures from Genesis to Revelation. Christ was the Lamb of God slain from the foundation of the world.

Revelation 13:8

Rev 13:8 And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.

A. Some representative Old Testament passages which set forth Christ as Redeemer.

1. The seed of the woman.

Genesis 3:15

Gen And I will put enmity between thee and the woman, and between thy seed and her seed; it shall bruise thy head, and thou shalt bruise his heel.3:15

2. A prophet like Moses.

Deuteronomy 18:15-19

Deu 18:15 The LORD thy God will raise up unto thee a Prophet from the midst of thee, of thy brethren, like unto me; unto him ye shall hearken;

Deu 18:16 According to all that thou desiredst of the LORD thy God in Horeb in the day of the assembly, saying, Let me not hear again the voice of the LORD my God, neither let me see this great fire any more, that I die not.

Deu And the LORD said unto me, They have well spoken that which they have spoken.18:17

Deu 18:18 I will raise them up a Prophet from among their brethren, like unto thee, and will put my words in his mouth; and he shall speak unto them all that I shall command him.

Deu 18:19 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever will not hearken unto my words which he shall speak in my name, I will require it of him.

3. A Redeemer both human and divine.

Isaiah 9:6

Isa 9:6 For unto us a child is born, unto us a son is given: and the government shall be upon his shoulder: and his name shall be called Wonderful, Counsellor, The mighty God, The everlasting Father, The Prince of Peace.

4. A governor coming out of .

Micah 5:2

Micah 5:2 But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting.

Matthew 2:6

Mat 2:6 And thou, in the, art not the least among the princes of Juda: for out of thee shall come a Governor, that shall rule my people. of

5. A suffering substitute.
Isaiah 53:4-9

Read from the Bible.

6. The crucified one.

Psalm 22:1-2

Psa 22:1 To the chief Musician upon Aijeleth Shahar, A Psalm of David. My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me? why art thou so far from helping me, and from the words of my roaring?

Psa 22:2 O my God, I cry in the daytime, but thou hearest not; and in the night season, and am not silent.

Psalm -2822:27

Psa All the ends of the world shall remember and turn unto the LORD: and all the kindreds of the nations shall worship before thee.22:27

Psa For the kingdom is the LORD'S: and he is the governor among the nations.22:28

B. Clear New Testament teachings regarding salvation.

1. Deliverance from God's wrath.

Romans 1:17

Rom For therein is the righteousness of God revealed from faith to faith: as it is written, The just shall live by faith.1:17

Romans 8:1-3

Rom 8:1 There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

Rom 8:2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

Rom 8:3 For what the law could not do, in that it was weak through the flesh, God sending his own Son in the likeness of sinful flesh, and for sin, condemned sin in the flesh:

2. Expiation (atonement, redemption, propitiation) of man's guilt.

Romans 3:21-26

Rom But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets;3:21

Rom Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference:3:22

Rom For all have sinned, and come short of the glory of God;3:23

Rom Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus:3:24

Rom Whom God hath set forth to be a propitiation through faith in his blood, to declare his righteousness for the remission of sins that are past, through the forbearance of God;3:25

Rom To declare, I say, at this time his righteousness: that he might be just, and the justifier of him which believeth in Jesus.3:26

3. Putting away sin.

Hebrews 9:26-28

Heb For then must he often have suffered since the foundation of the world: but now once in the end of the world hath he appeared to put away sin by the sacrifice of himself.9:26

Heb And as it is appointed unto men once to die, but after this the judgment:9:27

Heb So Christ was once offered to bear the sins of many; and unto them that look for him shall he appear the second time without sin unto salvation.9:28

4. The cancellation of the debt to the law.

Romans 4:8-25

Read from the bible.

5. Restoration to fellowship with God.

Romans 5:1-25

Read from the Bible.

6. Emancipation (liberation, release, freedom, liberty)
from the power of sin.

Romans 8:1-2

Rom 8:1 There is therefore now no condemnation to them which are in Christ Jesus, who walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit.

Rom 8:2 For the law of the Spirit of life in Christ Jesus hath made me free from the law of sin and death.

7. Deliverance through a personal relationship with Jesus Christ.

Romans 8:29-30

Rom For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren.8:29

Rom Moreover whom he did predestinate, them he also called: and whom he called, them he also justified: and whom he justified, them he also glorified.8:30

Romans 8:35-39

Rom Who shall separate us from the love of Christ? shall tribulation, or distress, or persecution, or famine, or nakedness, or peril, or sword?8:35

Rom As it is written, For thy sake we are killed all the day long; we are accounted as sheep for the slaughter.8:36

Rom Nay, in all these things we are more than conquerors through him that loved us.8:37

Rom For I am persuaded, that neither death, nor life, nor angels, nor principalities, nor powers, nor things present, nor things to come,8:38

Rom Nor height, nor depth, nor any other creature, shall be able to separate us from the love of God, which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.8:39

1 John 4:4

1 John 4:4 Ye are of God, little children, and have overcome them: because greater is he that is in you, than he that is in the world.

1 John 4:6

1 John 4:6 We are of God: he that knoweth God heareth us; he that is not of God heareth not us. Hereby know we the spirit of truth, and the spirit of error.

1 John 4:17

1 John Herein is our love made perfect, that we may have boldness in the day of judgment: because as he is, so are we in this world.4:17

Hebrews 2:14

Heb 2:14 Forasmuch then as the children are partakers of flesh and blood, he also himself likewise took part of the same; that through death he might destroy him that had the power of death, that is, the devil;

Hebrews 2:16

Heb For verily he took not on him the nature of angels; but he took on him the seed of Abraham.2:16

V. Jesus Christ as Mediator between God and man.

A. Consider the authority of Jesus.

Matthew 28:18

Mat 28:18 And Jesus came and spake unto them, saying, All power is given unto me in heaven and in earth.

Matthew 11:27

Mat All things are delivered unto me of my Father: and no man knoweth the Son, but the Father; neither knoweth any man the Father, save the Son, and he to whomsoever the Son will reveal him.11:27

John 5:22

John For the Father judgeth no man, but hath committed all judgment unto the Son:5:22

John 5:25-27

John 5:25 Verily, verily, I say unto you, The hour is coming, and now is, when the dead shall hear the voice of the Son of God: and they that hear shall live.

John For as the Father hath life in himself; so hath he given to the Son to have life in himself;5:26

John And hath given him authority to execute judgment also, because he is the Son of man.5:27

B. Consider the qualifications of Jesus.

1. It was necessary for Him to have a divine nature.

a. Necessary that He might represent the Father.

John 5:30

John I can of mine own self do nothing: as I hear, I judge: and my judgment is just; because I seek not mine own will, but the will of the Father which hath sent me.5:30

John 5:36-37

John 5:36 But I have greater witness than that of John: for the works which the Father hath given me to finish, the same works that I do, bear witness of me, that the Father hath sent me.

John And the Father himself, which hath sent me, hath borne witness of me. Ye have neither heard his voice at any time, nor seen his shape.5:37

1 John 4:14

1 John 4:14 And we have seen and do testify that the Father sent the Son to be the Saviour of the world.

b. Necessary that He might reveal the Father.

John 1:18

John 1:18 No man hath seen God at any time; the only begotten Son, which is in the bosom of the Father, he hath declared him.

c. Necessary that He might be above all law and infinite.

Romans 10:4

Rom 10:4 For Christ is the end of the law for righteousness to every one that believeth.

Galatians 3:13

Gal 3:13 Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:

John 12:34

John 12:34 The people answered him, We have heard out of the law that Christ abide th for ever: and how sayest thou, The Son of man must be lifted up? who is this Son of man?

d. Necessary that He might possess wisdom, knowledge and power.

Isaiah 11:2

Isa 11:2 And the spirit of the LORD shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the LORD;

2. It was necessary for Him to have a human nature.

a. Necessary that He might represent man as the last Adam.

Romans 5:15-19

Rom 5:15 But not as the offence, so also is the free gift. For if through the offence of one many

be dead, much more the grace of God, and the gift by grace, which is by one man, Jesus Christ, hath abounded unto many.

Rom 5:16 And not as it was by one that sinned, so is the gift: for the judgment was by one to condemnation, but the free gift is of many offences unto justification.

Rom 5:17 For if by one man's offence death reigned by one; much more they which receive abundance of grace and of the gift of righteousness shall reign in life by one, Jesus Christ.)

Rom 5:18 Therefore as by the offence of one judgment came upon all men to condemnation; even so by the righteousness of one the free gift came upon all men unto justification of life.

Rom 5:19 For as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall many be made righteous.

b. Necessary that He might live under the law and fulfill it's righteousness.

Galatians 4:4-5

Gal 4:4 But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law,

Gal 4:5 To redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons.

c. Necessary that He might become the true High Priest for the people of God.

Hebrews 2:17-18

Heb 2:17 Wherefore in all things it behoved him to be made like unto his brethren, that he might be a merciful and faithful high priest in things pertaining to God, to make reconciliation for the sins of the people.

Heb 2:18 For in that he himself hath suffered being tempted, he is able to succour them that are tempted.

d. Necessary that He might be the firstborn among many brethren.

Romans 8:29

Rom 8:29 For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren.

[The first-born among many brethren.] That he might be the chief or head of all the redeemed; for HIS human nature is the first-fruits of the resurrection from the dead; and He is the first human being that, after having passed through death, was raised to eternal glory. See Dr. Taylor. (from Adam Clarke Commentary)

1) Christ has the honor of being the great pattern for those which the Father gave Him.

1 Timothy 1:16

1 Tim 1:16 Howbeit for this cause I obtained mercy, that in me first Jesus Christ might show forth all longsuffering, for a pattern to them which should hereafter believe on him to life everlasting.

2) Christ has the distinction of being the great prince who is the head of those which the Father gave Him.

Acts 5:31

Acts 5:31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

Ephesians 1:22

Eph 1:22 And hath put all things under his feet, and gave him to be the head over all things to the church,

3) Christ has the to pre-eminence among all those which the Father gave Him.

Colossians 1:18

Col 1:18 And he is the head of the body, the church: who is the beginning, the firstborn from the dead; that in all things he might have the preeminence.

4) Christ has the joy of seeing His seed grow, develop into maturity honoring and glorifying Him and the Father.

Isaiah 53:11

Isa 53:11 He shall see of the travail of his soul, and shall be satisfied: by his knowledge shall my righteous servant justify many; for he shall bear their iniquities.

C. Consider the prerogative (an exclusive or special right, power or privilege) of Jesus relating to His office as mediator.

1. This prerogative is proven by given direct testimony in the Scriptures.

1 Timothy 2:5

1 Tim 2:5 For there is one God, and one mediator between God and men, the man Christ Jesus;

Acts 4:12

Acts 4:12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

2. This prerogative is proven by the fulfillment of Christ

of every mediatorial function.

Hebrews 10:14

Heb 10:14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

3. This prerogative is proven by the fact Jesus provides complete salvation.

John 14:6

John 14:6 Jesus saith unto him, I am the way, the truth, and the life: no man cometh unto the Father, but by me.

Acts 4:12

Acts 4:12 Neither is there salvation in any other: for there is none other name under heaven given among men, whereby we must be saved.

Hebrews 7:25

Heb 7:25 Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.

4. This prerogative is proven by the fact that Jesus exhaustively executed completely His offices of prophet, priest and king. Having completely fulfilled His offices He invites all to come to Him directly.

Matthew 11:28

Mat 11:28 Come unto me, all ye that labour and are heavy laden, and I will give you rest.

John 6:44

John 6:44 No man can come to me, except the Father which hath sent me draw him: and I will raise him up at the last day.

a. Consider His office as prophet. A prophet is one who speaks for another.

John 5:36

John 5:36 But I have greater witness than that of John: for the works which the Father hath given me to finish, the same works that I do, bear witness of me, that the Father hath sent me.

John 12:49-50

John 12:49 For I have not spoken of myself; but the Father which sent me, he gave

me a commandment, what I should say, and what I should speak.

John 12:50 And I know that his commandment is life everlasting; whatsoever I speak therefore, even as the Father said unto me, so I speak.

b. Consider His office as priest.

1) Qualifications for a priest.

a) He must be taken from among men to represent them.

Hebrews 5:1-2

Heb 5:1 For every high priest taken from among men is ordained for men in things pertaining to God, that he may offer both gifts and sacrifices for sins:

Heb 5:2 Who can have compassion on the ignorant, and on them that are out of the way; for that he himself also is compassed with infirmity.

b) He must be chosen by God as a special representative.

Hebrews 5:4

Heb 5:4 And no man taketh this honour unto himself, but he that is called of God, as was Aaron.

Numbers 16:5

Num 16:5 And he spake unto Korah and unto all his company, saying, Even to morrow the LORD will show who are his, and who is holy; and will cause him to come near unto him: even him whom he hath chosen will he cause to come near unto him.

c) He must be absolutely holy, morally pure and consecrated.

Leviticus 21:6

Lev 21:6 They shall be holy unto their God, and not profane the name of their God: for the offerings of the LORD made by fire, and the bread of their God, they do offer: therefore they shall be holy.

Leviticus 21:8

Lev 21:8 Thou shalt sanctify him therefore; for he offereth the bread of thy God: he shall be holy unto thee: for I the LORD, which sanctify you, am holy.

d) He must possess the right to draw near to God to offer sacrifices for sin and to make intercession.

Exodus 19:22

Exo 19:22 And let the priests also, which come near to the LORD, sanctify themselves, lest

the LORD break forth upon them.

Leviticus 16:3

Lev 16:3 Thus shall Aaron come into the holy place: with a young bullock for a sin offering, and a ram for a burnt offering.

Leviticus 16:7

Lev 16:7 And he shall take the two goats, and present them before the LORD at the door of the tabernacle of the congregation.

Leviticus 16:12

Lev 16:12 And he shall take a censer full of burning coals of fire from off the altar before the LORD, and his hands full of sweet incense beaten small, and bring it within the veil:

Leviticus 16:15

Lev 16:15 Then shall he kill the goat of the sin offering, that is for the people, and bring his blood within the veil, and do with that blood as he did with the blood of the bullock, and sprinkle it upon the mercy seat, and before the mercy seat:

2) Notice how the qualifications for priest were fulfilled by Jesus.

a) Jesus was taken from among men as their representative before God.

Hebrews 2:16

Heb 2:16 For verily he took not on him the nature of angels; but he took on him the seed of Abraham.

Hebrews 4:15

Heb 4:15 For we have not an high priest which cannot be touched with the feeling of our infirmities; but was in all points tempted like as we are, yet without sin.

b) Jesus was chosen by God.

Hebrews 5:5-6

Heb 5:5 So also Christ glorified not himself to be made an high priest; but he that said unto him, Thou art my Son, to day have I begotten thee.

Heb 5:6 As he saith also in another place, Thou art a priest for ever after the order of Melchisedec.

c) Jesus was absolutely holy.

Luke 1:35

Luke 1:35 And the angel answered and said unto her, The Holy Ghost shall come upon thee, and the power of the Highest shall overshadow thee: therefore also that holy thing which shall be born of thee shall be called the Son of God.

d) Jesus had the right of access to God and possessed influence with God.

John 16:28

John 16:28 I came forth from the Father, and am come into the world: again, I leave the world, and go to the Father.

John 11:42

John 11:42 And I knew that thou hearest me always: but because of the people which stand by I said it, that they may believe that thou hast sent me.

Hebrews 1:3

Heb 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high;

Hebrews 9:11-14

Heb 9:11 But Christ being come an high priest of good things to come, by a greater and more perfect tabernacle, not made with hands, that is to say, not of this building;

Heb 9:12 Neither by the blood of goats and calves, but by his own blood he entered in once into the holy place, having obtained eternal redemption for us.

Heb 9:13 For if the blood of bulls and of goats, and the ashes of an heifer sprinkling the

unclean, sanctifieth to the purifying of the flesh:

Heb 9:14 How much more shall the blood of Christ, who through the eternal Spirit offered himself without spot to God, purge your conscience from dead works to serve the living God?

e) Jesus rendered obedience and made propitiation and intercession while on earth.

Romans 5:19

Rom 5:19 For as by one man's disobedience many were made sinners, so by the obedience of one shall many be made righteous.

f) Jesus presented His sacrifice in heaven and ever lives to make intercession for the redeemed

Hebrews 7:24-25

Heb 7:24 But this man, because he continueth ever, hath an unchangeable priesthood.

Heb 7:25 Wherefore he is able also to save them to the uttermost that come unto God by him, seeing he ever liveth to make intercession for them.

c. Consider His office as king as well as His kingdom.

1) Christ as king.

a) Isaiah prophesied of Him.

Isaiah 11:1-4

Isa 11:1 And there shall come forth a rod out of the stem of Jesse, and a Branch shall grow out of his roots:

Isa 11:2 And the spirit of the LORD shall rest upon him, the spirit of wisdom and understanding, the spirit of counsel and might, the spirit of knowledge and of the fear of the LORD;

Isa 11:3 And shall make him of quick understanding in the fear of the LORD: and he shall not judge after the sight of his eyes, neither reprove after the hearing of his ears:

Isa 11:4 But with righteousness shall he judge the poor, and reprove with equity for the meek of the earth: and he shall smite the earth with the rod of his mouth, and with the breath of his lips shall he slay the wicked.

b) His reign is spoken of by

Isaiah and Micah.

Isaiah 11:5-9

Isa 11:5 And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

Isa 11:6 The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

Isa 11:7 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

Isa 11:8 And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice' den.

Isa 11:9 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the LORD, as the waters cover the sea.

Micah 5:2

Micah 5:2 But thou, Bethlehem Ephratah, though thou be little among the thousands of Judah, yet out of thee shall he come forth unto me that is to be ruler in Israel; whose goings forth have been from of old, from everlasting.

c) He was born in Bethlehem of Judaea.

Matthew 1:21-25

Mat 1:21 And she shall bring forth a son, and thou shalt call his name JESUS: for he shall save his people from their sins.

Mat 1:22 Now all this was done, that it might be fulfilled which was spoken of the Lord by the prophet, saying,

Mat 1:23 Behold, a virgin shall be with child, and shall bring forth a son, and they shall call his name Emmanuel, which being interpreted is, God with us.

Mat 1:24 Then Joseph being raised from sleep did as the angel of the Lord had bidden him, and took unto him his wife:

Mat 1:25 And knew her not till she had brought forth her firstborn son: and he called his name JESUS.

Luke 1:32-33

Luke 1:32 He shall be great, and shall be called the Son of the Highest: and the Lord God shall give unto him the throne of his father David:

Luke 1:33 And he shall reign over the house of Jacob for ever; and of his kingdom there shall be no end.

d) He was rejected by those to whom He came.

Isaiah 53:3

Isa 53:3 He is despised and rejected of men; a man of sorrows, and acquainted with grief: and we hid as it were our faces from him; he was despised, and we esteemed

him not.

John 1:11

John 1:11 He came unto his own, and his own received him not.

e) He was crucified by those to
whom He was sent.

(1) He was called a glutton

and winebibber .

Matthew 11:18-19

Mat 11:18 For John came neither eating nor drinking, and they say, He hath a devil.

Mat 11:19 The Son of man came eating and drinking, and they say, Behold a man gluttonous, and a winebibber, a friend of publicans and sinners. But wisdom is justified of her children.

(2) He was accused of being
in league with the devil.

Matthew 12:24

Mat 12:24 But when the Pharisees heard it, they said, This fellow doth not cast out devils, but by Beelzebub the prince of the devils.

(3) He foretold His death.

Matthew 20:17-19

Mat 20:17 And Jesus going up to Jerusalem took the twelve disciples apart in the way, and said unto them,

Mat 20:18 Behold, we go up to Jerusalem; and the Son of man shall be betrayed unto the chief priests and unto the

scribes, and they shall condemn him to death,

Mat 20:19 And shall deliver him to the Gentiles to mock, and to scourge, and to crucify him: and the third day he shall rise again.

(4) He was crucified.

Matthew 27:34-35

Mat 27:34 They gave him vinegar to drink mingled with gall: and when he had tasted thereof, he would not drink.

Mat 27:35 And they crucified him, and parted his garments, casting lots: that it might be fulfilled which was spoken by the prophet, They parted my garments among them, and upon my vesture did they cast lots.

2) The kingdom of Christ.

a) The kingdom was promised to David.

2 Samuel 7:2-16
Read from the Bible.

b) The kingdom was predicted by Daniel.

Daniel 7:13-14

Dan 7:13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the

Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him.

Dan 7:14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.

c) The kingdom was described by Isaiah.

Isaiah 11:5-9

Isa 11:5 And righteousness shall be the girdle of his loins, and faithfulness the girdle of his reins.

Isa 11:6 The wolf also shall dwell with the lamb, and the leopard shall lie down with the kid; and the calf and the young lion and the fatling together; and a little child shall lead them.

Isa 11:7 And the cow and the bear shall feed; their young ones shall lie down together: and the lion shall eat straw like the ox.

Isa 11:8 And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice' den.

Isa 11:9 They shall not hurt nor destroy in all my holy mountain: for the earth shall be full of the knowledge of the LORD, as the waters cover the sea.

d) The laws of the kingdom were proclaimed.

Matthew chapters 5-7

Read from the Bible.

e) The kingdom was declared to be at hand.

Matthew 3:2

Mat 3:2 And saying, Repent ye: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

f) The disciples were taught to pray for the coming of the kingdom.

Matthew 6:9-10

Mat 6:9 After this manner therefore pray ye: Our Father which art in heaven, Hallowed be thy name.

Mat 6:10 Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done in earth, as it is in heaven.

g) The expansion of the kingdom.

Matthew 25:31-46

Read from the Bible.

VI. The application of Christ's redemption.

A. The application of Christ's redemption is by faith.

1. There is no formal definition of faith in the Scriptures. The nearest definition is found in the book of Hebrews.

Hebrews 11:1

Heb 11:1 Now faith is the substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen.

“Faith is a personal act in relation to another person” The concept of faith is that of a prop or support upon which a person can confidently lean or rest. An early example of faith in the Bible is found in the book of Genesis.

Genesis 15:3-6

Gen 15:3 And Abram said, Behold, to me thou hast given no seed: and, lo, one born in my house is mine heir.

Gen 15:4 And, behold, the word of the LORD came unto him, saying, This shall not be thine heir; but he that shall come forth out of thine own bowels shall be thine heir.

Gen 15:5 And he brought him forth abroad, and said, Look now toward heaven, and tell the stars, if thou be able to number them: and he said unto him, So shall thy seed be.

Gen 15:6 And he believed in the LORD; and he counted it to him for righteousness.

2. There are three basic elements of faith as with repentance.

a. There is the intellectual element relating to facts.

John 2:23

John 2:23 Now when he was in Jerusalem at the passover, in the feast day, many believed in his name, when they saw the miracles which he did.

Romans 10:17

Rom 10:17 So then faith cometh by hearing, and hearing by the word of God.

b. There is the emotional element relating to

feeling.

Matthew 13:20-21

Mat 13:20 But he that received the seed into stony places, the same is he that heareth the word, and anon with joy receiveth it;

Mat 13:21 Yet hath he not root in himself, but dureth for a while: for when tribulation or persecution ariseth because of the word, by and by he is offended.

Mark 4:16-17

Mark 4:16 And these are they likewise which are sown on stony ground; who, when they have heard the word, immediately receive it with gladness;

Mark 4:17 And have no root in themselves, and so endure but for a time: afterward, when affliction or persecution ariseth for the word's sake, immediately they are offended.

c. There is the volitional (having to do with the will) element relating to action in which the individual casts himself upon Jesus completely trusting Him as his Savior and Lord.

1) By an act of the will there is a surrender of the individual as guilty and defiled to the rule of Christ.

Isaiah 1:18

Isa 1:18 Come now, and let us reason together, saith the LORD: though your sins be as scarlet, they shall be as white as snow; though they be red like crimson, they shall be as wool.

2) Upon the will being surrendered to Christ there is the reception and appropriation of Jesus Christ as the source of pardon and life.

Romans 10:9-11

Rom 10:9 That if thou shalt confess with thy mouth the Lord Jesus, and shalt believe in thine heart that God hath raised him from the dead, thou shalt be saved.

Rom 10:10 For with the heart man believeth unto righteousness; and with the mouth confession is made unto salvation.

Rom 10:11 For the scripture saith, Whosoever believeth on him shall not be ashamed.

B. The application of Christ's redemption is through repentance. Repentance is a change of mind and purpose. When applied to the individual in his

relationship to Christ's redemption it expresses the change of mind and purpose of the individual toward God the Father, Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit.

As with faith there are three primary elements to repentance.

1. There is the intellectual (deals with facts) element which involves recognition of sin in regard to personal guilt, defacement and helplessness.

Romans 1:32

Rom 1:32 Who knowing the judgment of God, that they which commit such things are worthy of death, not only do the same, but have pleasure in them that do them.

Romans 3:20

Rom 3:20 Therefore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin.

2. There is the emotional (deals with feeling) element involving sorrow for sin as committed against God, goodness and justice.

Psalms 51:1-2

Psa 51:1 To the chief Musician, A Psalm of David, when Nathan the prophet came unto him, after he had gone in to Bathsheba. Have mercy upon me, O God, according to thy lovingkindness: according unto the multitude of thy tender mercies blot out my transgressions.

Psa 51:2 Wash me thoroughly from mine iniquity, and cleanse me from my sin.

Psalms 51:10

Psa 51:10 Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me.

Psalms 51:14

Psa 51:14 Deliver me from bloodguiltiness, O God, thou God of my salvation: and my tongue shall sing aloud of thy righteousness.

3. There is the volitional (deals with will) element involving the inner turning from sin and a disposition to seek cleansing and pardon. Repentance may be defined as that complex act of the soul involving the intellect in recognizing sin as involving guilt, the emotions as expressing sorrow for sin as committed against God, goodness and justice and the changing of the disposition of the will with an inward turning from sin to God with the purpose of seeking cleansing and pardon.

a. The importance of repentance.

1) Repentance was the keynote of the preaching of John the Baptist, the Apostles and Jesus.

Matthew 4:17

Mat 4:17 From that time Jesus began to preach, and to say, Repent: for the kingdom of heaven is at hand.

Mark 6:12

Mark 6:12 And they went out, and preached that men should repent.

Acts 2:38

Acts 2:38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

Acts 20:21

Acts 20:21 Testifying both to the Jews, and also to the Greeks, repentance toward God, and faith toward our Lord Jesus Christ.

b. Repentance was in Christ's parting commission to the twelve.

Luke 24:47

Luke 24:47 And that repentance and remission of sins should be preached in his name among all nations, beginning at Jerusalem.

c. Repentance is the Lord's supreme desire.

2 Peter 3:9

2 Pet 3:9 The Lord is not slack concerning his promise, as some men count slackness; but is longsuffering to us-ward, not willing that any should perish, but that all should come to repentance.

d. Repentance is commanded by God.

Acts 17:30

Acts 17:30 And the times of this ignorance God winked at; but now commandeth all men every where to repent:

e. Repentance is the door through which man escapes perdition (destruction, damnation, doom, hell).

Luke 13:3

Luke 13:3 I tell you, Nay: but, except ye repent, ye shall all likewise perish.

3. The manner in which repentance is manifested.

a. Repentance is manifested in deep sorrow for sin, self-humiliation and self-abhorrence.

Joel 2:12-13

Joel 2:12 Therefore also now, saith the LORD, turn ye even to me with all your heart, and with fasting, and with weeping, and with mourning:

Joel 2:13 And rend your heart, and not your garments, and turn unto the LORD your God: for he is gracious and merciful, slow to anger, and of great kindness, and repenteth him of the evil.

Job 42:5-6

Job 42:5 I have heard of thee by the hearing of the ear: but now mine eye seeth thee.

Job 42:6 Wherefore I abhor myself, and repent in dust and ashes.

b. Repentance is manifested in confession of sin and prayer to God for mercy.

Hosea 14:1-2

Hosea 14:1 O Israel, return unto the LORD thy God; for thou hast fallen by thine iniquity.

Hosea 14:2 Take with you words, and turn to the LORD: say unto him, Take away all

iniquity, and receive us graciously: so will we render the calves of our lips.

Luke 18:13-14

Luke 18:13 And the publican, standing afar off, would not lift up so much as his eyes unto heaven, but smote upon his breast, saying, God be merciful to me a sinner.

Luke 18:14 I tell you, this man went down to his house justified rather than the other: for every one that exalteth himself shall be abased; and he that humbleth himself shall be exalted.

c. Repentance is manifested in turning to God from all else to trust and serve Him, doing works worthy of repentance. Repentance is not merely abstinence from doing evil but is the positive performance of good.

Acts 26:20

Acts 26:20 But showed first unto them of Damascus, and at Jerusalem, and throughout all the coasts of Judaea, and then to the Gentiles, that they should repent and turn to God, and do works meet for repentance.

d. Repentance is manifested in following the Lord in believer's baptism. Baptism is God's appointed way of confessing Christ and manifesting salvation.

Matthew 28:19

Mat 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

4. The means by which repentance is effected.

a. It is a gift of God.

Repentance is not something a person can take on at will but it is the expression of the grace of God worked out in the individual.

Acts 11:18

Acts 11:18 When they heard these things, they held their peace, and glorified God, saying, Then hath God also to the Gentiles granted repentance unto life.

b. It is a gift of the crucified and exalted Christ.

Acts 5:31

Acts 5:31 Him hath God exalted with his right hand to be a Prince and a Saviour, for to give repentance to Israel, and forgiveness of sins.

c. It is effected through believing the Word of God.

Jonah 3:5

Jonah 3:5 So the people of Nineveh believed God, and proclaimed a fast, and put on sackcloth, from the greatest of them even to the least of them.

Jonah 3:10

Jonah 3:10 And God saw their works, that they turned from their evil way; and God repented of the evil, that he had said that he would do unto them; and he did it not.

Consider the phrase “and God repented of the evil....”

The Ninevites repented, and brought forth fruits meet for repentance; works which showed that they did earnestly repent. God therefore changed his purpose, and the city was saved. His original purpose was: If the Ninevites do not return from their evil ways, and the violence that is in their hands, within forty days, He

would destroy the city. The Ninevites did return; therefore escaped the threatened judgment. The threatening was conditional.

The reference to “repented of the evil” is in line with the fierce anger which God was exhibiting toward Ninevites. The word “evil” does in no wise infer that God is less than holy, less than righteous or less than just. Upon repentance by the Ninevites God changed His disposition toward the Ninevites sparing the city and saving their lives.

d. It is effected through the goodness of God.

Romans 2:4

Rom 2:4 Or despisest thou the riches of his goodness and forbearance and longsuffering; not knowing that the goodness of God leadeth thee to repentance?

e. It is effected through the reproof and chastisement of God.

Hebrews 12:6

Heb 12:6 For whom the Lord loveth he chasteneth, and scourgeth every son whom he receiveth.

Hebrews 12:10-11

Heb 12:10 For they verily for a few days chastened us after their own pleasure; but he for our profit, that we might be partakers of his holiness.

Heb 12:11 Now no chastening for the present seemeth to be joyous, but grievous: nevertheless afterward it yieldeth the peaceable fruit of righteousness unto them which are exercised thereby.

f. It is effected through a vision of God.

Job 42:5-6

Job 42:5 I have heard of thee by the hearing of the ear: but now mine eye seeth thee.

Job 42:6 Wherefore I abhor myself, and repent in dust and ashes.

2 Corinthians 3:18

2 Cor 3:18 But we all, with open face beholding as in a glass the glory of the Lord, are changed into the same image from glory to glory, even as by the Spirit of the Lord.

C. The application of Christ's redemption is through regeneration.

1. The characteristics of regeneration.

a. Regeneration is being born again from above.

John 3:3

John 3:3 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.

John 3:5

John 3:5 Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.

John 3:7

John 3:7 Marvel not that I said unto thee, Ye must be born again.

b. Regeneration is being begotten of God.

James 1:18

James 1:18 Of his own will begat he us with the word of truth, that we should be a kind of firstfruits of his creatures.

c. Regeneration is becoming a new creature.

2 Corinthians 5:17

2 Cor 5:17 Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.

Galatians 6:15

Gal 6:15 For in Christ Jesus neither circumcision availeth any thing, nor

uncircumcision, but a new creature.

d. Regeneration is passing from death unto life.

1 John 3:14

1 John 3:14 We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren. He that loveth not his brother abideth in death.

Ephesians 2:4-5

Eph 2:4 But God, who is rich in mercy, for his great love wherewith he loved us,

Eph 2:5 Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;)

Romans 6:13

Rom 6:13 Neither yield ye your members as instruments of unrighteousness unto sin: but yield yourselves unto God, as those that are alive from the dead, and your members as instruments of righteousness unto God.

e. Regeneration is being called out of darkness into God's light.

1 Peter 2:9

1 Pet 2:9 But ye are a chosen generation, a royal priesthood, an holy nation, a peculiar

people; that ye should show forth the praises of him who hath called you out of darkness into his marvellous light:

f. Regeneration is the partaking of the divine nature.

2 Peter 1:4

2 Pet 1:4 Whereby are given unto us exceeding great and precious promises: that by these ye might be partakers of the divine nature, having escaped the corruption that is in the world through lust.

2. The necessity of regeneration.

a. The kingdom of God can not be seen without it.

John 3:3

John 3:3 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.

b. Because of man's real nature as a sinner.

John 3:6

John 3:6 That which is born of the flesh is flesh; and that which is born of the Spirit is spirit.

Galatians 5:19-21

Gal 5:19 Now the works of the flesh are manifest, which are these; Adultery, fornication, uncleanness, lasciviousness,

Gal 5:20 Idolatry, witchcraft, hatred, variance, emulations, wrath, strife, seditions, heresies,

Gal 5:21 Envyings, murders, drunkenness, revellings, and such like: of the which I tell you before, as I have also told you in time past, that

they which do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God.

Romans 8:7

Rom 8:7 Because the carnal mind is enmity against God: for it is not subject to the law of God, neither indeed can be.

Romans 8:9

Rom 8:9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.

Jeremiah 13:23

Jer 13:23 Can the Ethiopian change his skin, or the leopard his spots? then may ye also do good, that are accustomed to do evil.

c. Because of the nature of heaven. Nothing unclean will be allowed to enter.

Matthew 5:8

Mat 5:8 Blessed are the pure in heart: for they shall see God.

Revelation 21:27

Rev 21:27 And there shall in no wise enter into it any thing that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh a lie: but they which are written in the Lamb's book of life.

3. The results of regeneration.

a. There is renewal in knowledge after the likeness of God.

Colossians 3:10

Col 3:10 And have put on the new man, which is renewed in knowledge after the image of him that created him:

b. There is the renewal of righteousness and holiness.

Ephesians 4:23-24

Eph 4:23 And be renewed in the spirit of your mind;

Eph 4:24 And that ye put on the new man, which after God is created in righteousness and true holiness.

c. There is the passing away of old things.

2 Corinthians 5:17

2 Cor 5:17 Therefore if any man be in Christ, he is a new creature: old things are passed away; behold, all things are become new.

d. There is the Holy Spirit taking up residence in the repentant sinner.

Romans 8:9

Rom 8:9 But ye are not in the flesh, but in the Spirit, if so be that the Spirit of God dwell in you. Now if any man have not the Spirit of Christ, he is none of his.

1 Corinthians 3:16

1 Cor 3:16 Know ye not that ye are the temple of God, and that the Spirit of God dwelleth in you?

e. There is present salvation.

Titus 3:5

Titus 3:5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost;

4. The proofs or evidences of
regeneration.

- a. Jesus Christ is Lord of the life in reality.

1 Peter 4:1-2

1 Pet 4:1 Forasmuch then as Christ hath suffered for us in the flesh, arm yourselves likewise with the same mind: for he that hath suffered in the flesh hath ceased from sin;

1 Pet 4:2 That he no longer should live the rest of his time in the flesh to the lusts of men, but to the will of God.

- b. There is a life of righteousness in reality.

1 John 2:29

1 John 2:29 If ye know that he is righteous, ye know that every one that doeth righteousness is born of him.

- c. There is victory over sin in reality.

Romans 6:14

Rom 6:14 For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law, but under grace.

1 John 3:9

1 John 3:9 Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin; for his seed remaineth in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God.

- d. There is overcoming of the world in reality.

1 John 5:4-5

1 John 5:4 For whatsoever is born of God overcometh the world: and this is the victory that overcometh the world, even our faith.

1 John 5:5 Who is he that overcometh the world, but he that believeth that Jesus is the Son of God?

e. There is love for the brethren in reality.

1 John 4:7

1 John 4:7 Beloved, let us love one another: for love is of God; and every one that loveth is born of God, and knoweth God.

f. There is witness of the Spirit in reality.

Romans 8:16

Rom 8:16 The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God:

D. The application of Christ's redemption is by justification.

1. The meaning of justification.

Justification is that judicial act of God by which God declares the repentant sinner no longer to be exposed to the terror of the law but does stand as acquitted before Him. Justification is on account of the merit of Jesus Christ to whom the sinner is united by faith.

Deuteronomy 25:1

Deu 25:1 If there be a controversy between men, and they come unto judgment, that the judges may judge them; then they shall justify the righteous, and condemn the wicked.

2. The characteristic elements involved in the act of justification.

a. There is pardon or remission of sin.

Acts 13:38-39

Acts 13:38 Be it known unto you therefore, men and brethren, that through this man is preached unto you the forgiveness of sins:

Acts 13:39 And by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses.

Ephesians 1:7

Eph 1:7 In whom we have redemption through his blood, the forgiveness of sins, according to the riches of his grace;

b. There is restoration to divine favor.

Justification is much more than remission of sins or acquittal. The justified man is much more than a discharged criminal. He is restored to the position of one who is righteous. God treats the repentant sinner as though he had never sinned.

Romans 5:1-2

Rom 5:1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ:

Rom 5:2 By whom also we have access by faith into this grace wherein we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God.

Titus 3:5-7

Titus 3:5 Not by works of righteousness which we have done, but according to his mercy he saved us, by the washing of regeneration, and renewing of the Holy Ghost;

Titus 3:6 Which he shed on us abundantly through Jesus Christ our Saviour;

Titus 3:7 That being justified by his grace, we should be made heirs according to the hope of eternal life.

3. The grounds of justification.

a. Justification is not by the works of the law.

Romans 3:19-22

Rom 3:19 Now we know that what things soever the law saith, it saith to them who are under the law: that every mouth may be stopped, and all the world may become guilty before God.

Rom 3:20 Therefore by the deeds of the law there shall no flesh be justified in his sight: for by the law is the knowledge of sin.

Rom 3:21 But now the righteousness of God without the law is manifested, being witnessed by the law and the prophets;

Rom 3:22 Even the righteousness of God which is by faith of Jesus Christ unto all and upon all them that believe: for there is no difference:

Galatians 2:16

Gal 2:16 Knowing that a man is not justified by the works of the law, but by the faith of Jesus Christ, even we have believed in Jesus Christ, that we might be justified by the faith of Christ, and not by the works of the law: for by the works of the law shall no flesh be justified.

b. Justification is God's own gift through the

redemption that is in Christ Jesus.

Romans 5:9

Rom 5:9 Much more then, being now justified by his blood, we shall be saved from wrath through him.

Romans 3:24

Rom 3:24 Being justified freely by his grace through the redemption that is in Christ Jesus:

Galatians 3:13

Gal 3:13 Christ hath redeemed us from the curse of the law, being made a curse for us: for

it is written, Cursed is every one that hangeth on a tree:

2 Corinthians 5:21

2 Cor 5:21 For he hath made him to be sin for us, who knew no sin; that we might be made the righteousness of God in him.

Acts 13:39

Acts 13:39 And by him all that believe are justified from all things, from which ye could not be justified by the law of Moses.

- 1) Justification is not on the ground of any merit of the believer.
- 2) Justification is through the infinite merit of the righteousness purchased through the blood of Christ.
- 3) Justification is given to those who receive Christ by faith being justified from all things.
- 4) Justification causes the believer to have nothing reckoned against them by God because they have the righteousness of Christ imputed to them.
5. Justification makes an interchange of position between the redeemed and the redeemer.
6. Justification is positive for it is the reckoning righteous of the believer while forgiveness or remission of sin is negative in that it is the putting away of sin.
 - a. Justification has to do with the believer's standing before God which is absolute perfection in the eyes of God.

b. The believer's state or condition may differ decidedly from his standing before God.

4. The results of justification.

a. There is peace with God.

Romans 5:1

Rom 5:1 Therefore being justified by faith, we have peace with God through our Lord Jesus Christ:

b. There is the peace of God.

Philippians 4:7

Phil 4:7 And the peace of God, which passeth all understanding, shall keep your hearts and minds through Christ Jesus.

c. There is access into grace.

Romans 5:2

Rom 5:2 By whom also we have access by faith into this grace wherein we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God.

d. There is rejoicing in hope of the glory of God.

Romans 5:2

Rom 5:2 By whom also we have access by faith into this grace wherein we stand, and rejoice in hope of the glory of God.

e. There is glorying in tribulation.

Romans 5:3

Rom 5:3 And not only so, but we glory in tribulations also: knowing that tribulation worketh patience;

f. There is joy in God through our Lord Jesus Christ.

Romans 5:11

Rom 5:11 And not only so, but we also joy in God through our Lord Jesus Christ, by whom we have now received the atonement.

E. The application of Christ's redemption is on the basis of adoption.

1. Adoption means the "placing as a son." Regeneration changes the nature and adoption changes the family.

Ephesians 1:5

Eph 1:5 Having predestinated us unto the adoption of children by Jesus Christ to himself, according to the good pleasure of his will,

Galatians 4:4-5

Gal 4:4 But when the fulness of the time was come, God sent forth his Son, made of a woman, made under the law,

Gal 4:5 To redeem them that were under the law, that we might receive the adoption of sons.

2. The ground of adoption rests upon what Jesus is and what He has done.

3. The proof of adoption is the presence of the Holy Spirit in the heart of the believer. The Holy Spirit is the witness of one's sonship.

Galatians 4:6

Gal 4:6 And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.

Romans 8:15-16

Rom 8:15 For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.

Rom 8:16 The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God:

Galatians 5:22-23

Gal 5:22 But the fruit of the Spirit is love, joy, peace, longsuffering, gentleness, goodness, faith,

Gal 5:23 Meekness, temperance: against such there is no law.

4. The results of adoption.

a. There is the indwelling of the Holy Ghost.

Galatians 4:6

Gal 4:6 And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.

b. There is the deliverance from fear.

Romans 8:15

Rom 8:15 For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.

c. There is the being made heirs and joint heirs with Jesus Christ.

Romans 8:17

Rom 8:17 And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together.

F. The application of Christ's redemption is by sanctification.

1. The primary and secondary meaning of sanctification.

a. The primary meaning of sanctification is a dedication or setting apart for some specific and holy use. The setting apart is God's side of the question.

Leviticus 27:14-16

Lev 27:14 And when a man shall sanctify his house to be holy unto the LORD, then the priest shall estimate it, whether it be good or bad: as the priest shall estimate it, so shall it stand.

Lev 27:15 And if he that sanctified it will redeem his house, then he shall add the fifth part of the money of thy estimation unto it, and it shall be his.

Lev 27:16 And if a man shall sanctify unto the LORD some part of a field of his possession, then thy estimation shall be according to the seed thereof: an homer of barley seed shall be valued at fifty shekels of silver.

2 Chronicles 7:16

2 Chr 7:16 For now have I chosen and sanctified this house, that my name may be there for ever: and mine eyes and mine heart shall be there perpetually.

John 10:36

John 10:36 Say ye of him, whom the Father hath sanctified, and sent into the world, Thou blasphemest; because I said, I am the Son of God?

b. The secondary meaning of sanctification is separation from defilement. The separation process is man's side of the question.

2 Chronicles 29:15-18

2 Chr 29:15 And they gathered their brethren, and sanctified themselves, and came, according to the commandment of the king, by the words of the LORD, to cleanse the house of the LORD.

2 Chr 29:16 And the priests went into the inner part of the house of the LORD, to cleanse it, and brought out all the uncleanness that they found in the temple of the LORD into the court of the house of the LORD. And the Levites took it, to carry it out abroad into the brook Kidron.

2 Chr 29:17 Now they began on the first day of the first month to sanctify, and on the eighth day of the month came they to the porch of the LORD: so they sanctified the house of the LORD in eight days; and in the sixteenth day of the first month they made an end.

2 Chr 29:18 Then they went in to Hezekiah the king, and said, We have cleansed all the house of the LORD, and the altar of burnt offering, with all the vessels thereof, and the showbread table, with all the vessels thereof.

1 Thessalonians 4:3

1 Th 4:3 For this is the will of God, even your sanctification, that ye should abstain from fornication:

1 Thessalonians 5:22-23

1 Th 5:22 Abstain from all appearance of evil.

1 Th 5:23 And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

c. Failure to distinguish between the primary and secondary meanings of sanctification has led to much confusion. It is improper to ascribe God's side of the question to man or man's side of the question to God. God's act of sanctification

was performed once for all and man's part in sanctification is continuous.

d. Sanctification may be viewed in three lights.

- 1) There is formal sanctification in which God sets man apart by an act of His own will.
- 2) There is positional sanctification in which God makes the repentant sinner holy.
- 3) There is practical sanctification in which man is called upon to live in obedience to God.

2. The participants in the process of sanctification.

a. There is God the Father.

John 17:17

John 17:17 Sanctify them through thy truth: thy word is truth.

1 Thessalonians 5:23

1 Th 5:23 And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ.

b. There is God the Son (Jesus Christ).

Ephesians 5:25-26

Eph 5:25 Husbands, love your wives, even as Christ also loved the church, and gave himself for it;

Eph 5:26 That he might sanctify and cleanse it with the washing of water by the word,

Hebrews 10:10

Heb 10:10 By the which will we are sanctified through the offering of the body of Jesus Christ once for all.

c. There is God the Holy Spirit.

2 Thessalonians 2:13

2 Th 2:13 But we are bound to give thanks alway to God for you, brethren beloved of the Lord, because God hath from the beginning chosen you to salvation through sanctification of the Spirit and belief of the truth:

1 Peter 1:2

1 Pet 1:2 Elect according to the foreknowledge of God the Father, through sanctification of the Spirit, unto obedience and sprinkling of the blood of Jesus Christ: Grace unto you, and peace, be multiplied.

d. There is the Word of God.

John 17:17

John 17:17 Sanctify them through thy truth: thy word is truth.

e. There is the individual making a conscious effort toward sanctification.

2 Corinthians 6:17

2 Cor 6:17 Wherefore come out from among them, and be ye separate, saith the Lord, and touch not the unclean thing; and I will receive you,

3. The time at which sanctification occurs.

a. Positional sanctification involves a person's position "in Christ" as the result of faith. Because Christ is sanctified, believers are sanctified "in Him" and share His sanctification. This sanctification can not be improved upon.

- b. Experiential (practical) sanctification involves the believer in time and is realized as one approaches maturity. This element of sanctification is realized by the filling of the Holy Spirit and Bible doctrine.
- c. Ultimate sanctification is the believer in eternity when he receives a resurrection body like unto that of the Son of God. This part of sanctification leaves behind the old sin nature.

G. The application of Christ's redemption is of prayer.

The redemptive purpose of God culminates in the communion of the redeemed soul with God. The vital and blessed fellowship of the believer with the Father and the Son is the unfailing evidence of having experienced the saving grace of God.

Prayer is probably the second most neglected privilege the Christ has at his disposal. The most neglected is probably being a witness for the Lord. The saving relationship entitles the believer to the spiritual benefits of sonship which involves communication with the Father and the Son. Prayer is a time of listening to God, not a time of listing our want list and then hanging up the phone.

1. Characteristics of prayer.

- a. Prayer in the highest sense is the communion of the believer with God in which the believer speaks to God and God in turn speaks to him.
- b. The supreme triumph of the praying soul is not found in supplication to God; but, in God's revelation of Himself to the one praying.

2. Conditions of prevailing prayer.

The prayer life of many is unsatisfactory because there is a lack of understanding as to the conditions governing prayer.

- a. There must be the forsaking of sin.

Psalms 66:18

Psa 66:18 If I regard iniquity in my heart, the Lord will not hear me:

b. There must be a forgiving spirit.

Mark 11:25-26

Mark 11:25 And when ye stand praying, forgive, if ye have ought against any: that your Father also which is in heaven may forgive you your trespasses.

Mark 11:26 But if ye do not forgive, neither will your Father which is in heaven forgive your trespasses.

c. There must be a proper motive.

James 4:3

James 4:3 Ye ask, and receive not, because ye ask amiss, that ye may consume it upon your lusts.

d. There must be persistence in asking.

Romans 1:9

Rom 1:9 For God is my witness, whom I serve with my spirit in the gospel of his Son, that without ceasing I make mention of you always in my prayers;

1 Thessalonians 2:13

1 Th 2:13 For this cause also thank we God without ceasing, because, when ye received the word of God which ye heard of us, ye received it not as the word of men, but as it is in truth, the word of God, which effectually worketh also in you that believe.

1 Thessalonians 5:17

1 Th 5:17 Pray without ceasing.

e. There must be an asking in faith.

Mark 11:24

Mark 11:24 Therefore I say unto you, What things soever ye desire, when ye pray, believe that ye receive them, and ye shall have them.

f. There must be an asking according to the will of God.

1 John 5:14

1 John 5:14 And this is the confidence that we have in him, that, if we ask any thing according to his will, he heareth us:

g. There must be an asking in the name of Jesus.

John 16:23

John 16:23 And in that day ye shall ask me nothing. Verily, verily, I say unto you, Whatsoever ye shall ask the Father in my name, he will give it you.

h. There must be obedience to the divine commands.

1 John 3:22

1 John 3:22 And whatsoever we ask, we receive of him, because we keep his commandments, and do those things that are pleasing in his sight.

3. To whom is the believer to pray?

a. The believer is to pray to God the Father.

Acts 12:5

Acts 12:5 Peter therefore was kept in prison: but prayer was made without ceasing of the church unto God for him.

b. The believer is to pray to God the Son, Jesus

Christ.

Acts 7:59

Acts 7:59 And they stoned Stephen, calling upon God, and saying, Lord Jesus, receive my spirit.

c. There is no scriptural precedent for praying to the Holy Spirit; but, the believer is urged to pray in the Spirit.

Ephesians 6:18

Eph 6:18 Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;

Jude 1:20

Jude 1:20 But ye, beloved, building up yourselves on your most holy faith, praying in the Holy Ghost,

4. For whom should the believer pray?

a. He should pray for himself.

John 17:1

John 17:1 These words spake Jesus, and lifted up his eyes to heaven, and said, Father, the hour is come; glorify thy Son, that thy Son also may glorify thee:

b. He should pray for one another.

James 5:16

James 5:16 Confess your faults one to another, and pray one for another, that ye may be healed. The effectual fervent prayer of a righteous man availeth much.

Romans 1:9

Rom 1:9 For God is my witness, whom I serve with my spirit in the gospel of his Son, that without ceasing I make mention of you always in my prayers;

c. He should pray for the ministers of God's Word.

1) That they may have freedom of utterance in preaching the Word.

Ephesians 6:18-20

Eph 6:18 Praying always with all prayer and supplication in the Spirit, and watching thereunto with all perseverance and supplication for all saints;

Eph 6:19 And for me, that utterance may be given unto me, that I may open my mouth boldly, to make known the mystery of the gospel,

Eph 6:20 For which I am an ambassador in bonds: that therein I may speak boldly, as I ought to speak.

2) That the minister may have doors opened for him to preach.

Colossians 4:2-3

Col 4:2 Continue in prayer, and watch in the same with thanksgiving;

Col 4:3 Withal praying also for us, that God would open unto us a door of utterance, to speak the mystery of Christ, for which I am also in bonds:

d. He should pray for sick believers.

James 5:14-15

James 5:14 Is any sick among you? let him call for the elders of the church; and let them pray

over him, anointing him with oil in the name of the Lord:

James 5:15 And the prayer of faith shall save the sick, and the Lord shall raise him up; and if he have committed sins, they shall be forgiven him.

e. He should pray for rulers.

1 Timothy 2:1-3

1 Tim 2:1 I exhort therefore, that, first of all, supplications, prayers, intercessions, and giving of thanks, be made for all men;

1 Tim 2:2 For kings, and for all that are in authority; that we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty.

1 Tim 2:3 For this is good and acceptable in the sight of God our Saviour;

f. He should pray for his those who misuse you.

Luke 6:28

Luke 6:28 Bless them that curse you, and pray for them which despitefully use you.

g. He should pray for the nation Israel.

Romans 10:1

Rom 10:1 Brethren, my heart's desire and prayer to God for Israel is, that they might be saved.

5. For what should the believer pray?

a. For forgiveness of sins.

Psalm 41:4

Psa 41:4 I said, LORD, be merciful unto me: heal my soul; for I have sinned against thee.

b. For a clean heart.

Psalm 51:10

Psa 51:10 Create in me a clean heart, O God; and renew a right spirit within me.

c. For deliverance from the wicked one.

1 John 5:18

1 John 5:18 We know that whosoever is born of God sinneth not; but he that is begotten of God keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not.

d. For power to keep from temptation.

Matthew 6:13

Mat 6:13 And lead us not into temptation, but deliver us from evil: For thine is the kingdom, and the power, and the glory, for ever. Amen.

e. For the door of his lips to be kept.

Psalm 141:3

Psa 141:3 Set a watch, O LORD, before my mouth; keep the door of my lips.

f. For the wisdom to know how to pray.

Luke 11:1

Luke 11:1 And it came to pass, that, as he was praying in a certain place, when he ceased, one of his disciples said unto him, Lord, teach us to pray, as John also taught his disciples.

g. For opened eyes to be taught the wonders of God's Word.

Psalm 119:18

Psa 119:18 Open thou mine eyes, that I may behold
wondrous things out of thy law.
h. For sanctification.

1 Thessalonians 5:23

1 Th 5:23 And the very God of peace sanctify you wholly; and I pray God your
whole spirit and soul and body be preserved blameless unto the coming of our Lord
Jesus Christ.

i. For wisdom.

James 1:5

James 1:5 If any of you lack wisdom, let him ask of God, that giveth to all men
liberally, and upbraideth not; and it shall be given him.

j. For daily bread.

Matthew 6:11

Mat 6:11 Give us this day our daily bread.

k. For all his needs.

Philippians 4:6

Phil 4:6 Be careful for nothing; but in every thing by prayer and supplication with
thanksgiving let your requests be made known unto God.

Philippians 4:19

Phil 4:19 But my God shall supply all your need according to his riches in glory by
Christ Jesus.

H. The application of Christ's redemption gives assurance of
salvation.

1. Assurance viewed in a negative sense.

a. The fact that some profess salvation who do not

possess it does not detract from it's reality no more than a meteor detracts from the fixed stars. Grace can not be lost.

Ephesians 2:8

Eph 2:8 For by grace are ye saved through faith; and that not of yourselves: it is the gift of God:

b. Assurance does not mean a believer can not fall into sin. Peter is an example of this fact.

Luke 22:31-32

Luke 22:31 And the Lord said, Simon, Simon, behold, Satan hath desired to have you, that he may sift you as wheat:

Luke 22:32 But I have prayed for thee, that thy faith fail not: and when thou art converted, strengthen thy brethren.

c. Assurance does not mean that a believer's joy of salvation may not diminish. David is an example of this.

Psalms 51:12

Psa 51:12 Restore unto me the joy of thy salvation; and uphold me with thy free spirit.

d. Assurance does not mean that the believer must not persevere.

Philippians 2:12-13

Phil 2:12 Wherefore, my beloved, as ye have always obeyed, not as in my presence only, but now much more in my absence, work out your own salvation with fear and trembling.

Phil 2:13 For it is God which worketh in you both to will and to do of his good pleasure.

2. Assurance viewed in a positive sense. This involves the

proof of a believer's salvation.

a. There is proof from the very nature of salvation.

1) The believer is vitally united to Jesus Christ.

John 14:20

John 14:20 At that day ye shall know that I am in my Father, and ye in me, and I in you.

John 14:23

John 14:23 Jesus answered and said unto him, If a man love me, he will keep my words: and my Father will love him, and we will come unto him, and make our abode with him.

Ephesians 1:3-4

Eph 1:3 Blessed be the God and Father of our Lord Jesus Christ, who hath blessed us with all spiritual blessings in heavenly places in Christ:

Eph 1:4 According as he hath chosen us in him before the foundation of the world, that we should be holy and without blame before him in love:

2) The believer has experienced a new birth. It is impossible for him to be unborn.

John 3:3

John 3:3 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.

b. There is proof from the positive assertions of the Scriptures.

1) The believer has everlasting life.

John 3:36

John 3:36 He that believeth on the Son hath everlasting life: and he that believeth not the Son shall not see life; but the wrath of God abideth on him.

2) The believer has passed from death unto life.

John 5:24

John 5:24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.

3) The believer is in Christ and is perfected forever.

Hebrews 10:14

Heb 10:14 For by one offering he hath perfected for ever them that are sanctified.

4) The believer is kept by the power of God.

1 Peter 1:5

1 Pet 1:5 Who are kept by the power of God through faith unto salvation ready to be revealed in the last time.

5. The believer is justified and will therefore be glorified.

Romans 8:30

Rom 8:30 Moreover whom he did predestinate, them he also called: and whom he called, them he also justified: and whom he justified, them he also glorified.

6. The believer can not be plucked from the hand of either the Father or the Son.

John 10:27-30

John 10:27 My sheep hear my voice, and I know them, and they follow me:

John 10:28 And I give unto them eternal life; and they shall never perish, neither shall any man pluck them out of my hand.

John 10:29 My Father, which gave them me, is greater than all; and no man is able to pluck them out of my Father's hand.

John 10:30 I and my Father are one.

7. The believer is kept by Jesus Christ and shall never again be lost.
John 6:39

John 6:39 And this is the Father's will which hath sent me, that of all which he hath given me I should lose nothing, but should raise it up again at the last day.

John 17:12

John 17:12 While I was with them in the world, I kept them in thy name: those that thou gavest me I have kept, and none of them is lost, but the son of perdition; that the scripture might be fulfilled.

8. The believer is one of the whosoever will and shall never die.

John 11:26

John 11:26 And whosoever liveth and believeth in me shall never die. Believest thou this?

Acts 2:21

Acts 2:21 And it shall come to pass, that whosoever shall call on the name of the Lord shall be saved.

c. There is proof from the testimony of the Holy Spirit.

Romans 8:14-16

Rom 8:14 For as many as are led by the Spirit of God, they are the sons of God.

Rom 8:15 For ye have not received the spirit of bondage again to fear; but ye have received the Spirit of adoption, whereby we cry, Abba, Father.

Rom 8:16 The Spirit itself beareth witness with our spirit, that we are the children of God:

d. There is proof from a three-fold witness.

1) There is the witness of God's Word.

John 5:24

John 5:24 Verily, verily, I say unto you, He that heareth my word, and believeth on him that sent me, hath everlasting life, and shall not come into condemnation; but is passed from death unto life.

2) There is the witness of the believer's life.

1 John 3:14

1 John 3:14 We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren. He that loveth not his brother abideth in death.

3) There is the witness of the Holy Spirit.

Galatians 4:6

Gal 4:6 And because ye are sons, God hath sent forth the Spirit of his Son into your hearts, crying, Abba, Father.

e. There is proof from the fact that John wrote a treatise with the purpose of leading believer's into assurance.

1 John 1:4

1 John 1:4 And these things write we unto you, that your joy may be full.

1 John 2:2-3

1 John 2:2 And he is the propitiation for our sins: and not for ours only, but also for the sins of the whole world.

1 John 2:3 And hereby we do know that we know him, if we keep his commandments.

1 John 2:5

1 John 2:5 But whoso keepeth his word, in him verily is the love of God perfected: hereby know we that we are in him.

1 John 2:20

1 John 2:20 But ye have an unction from the Holy One, and ye know all things.

1 John 2:23

1 John 2:23 Whosoever denieth the Son, the same hath not the Father: (but) he that acknowledgeth the Son hath the Father also.

1 John 2:25

1 John 2:25 And this is the promise that he hath promised us, even eternal life.

1 John 2:29

1 John 2:29 If ye know that he is righteous, ye know that every one that doeth righteousness is born of him.

1 John 3:1-2

1 John 3:1 Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not.

1 John 3:2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.

1 John 3:5

1 John 3:5 And ye know that he was manifested to take away our sins; and in him is no sin.

1 John 3:9

1 John 3:9 Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin; for his seed remaineth in him: and he cannot sin, because he is born of God.

1 John 3:14

1 John 3:14 We know that we have passed from death unto life, because we love the brethren. He that loveth not his brother abideth in death.

1 John 3:18-19

1 John 3:18 My little children, let us not love in word, neither in tongue; but in deed and in truth.

1 John 3:19 And hereby we know that we are of the truth, and shall assure our hearts before him.

1 John 3:24

1 John 3:24 And he that keepeth his commandments dwelleth in him, and he in him. And hereby we know that he abideth in us, by the Spirit which he hath given us.

1 John 4:2

1 John 4:2 Hereby know ye the Spirit of God: Every spirit that confesseth that Jesus Christ is come in the flesh is of God:

1 John 4:11-13

1 John 4:11 Beloved, if God so loved us, we ought also to love one another.

1 John 4:12 No man hath seen God at any time. If we love one another, God dwelleth in us, and his love is perfected in us.

1 John 4:13 Hereby know we that we dwell in him, and he in us, because he hath given us of his Spirit.

1 John 4:15

1 John 4:15 Whosoever shall confess that Jesus is the Son of God, God dwelleth in him, and he in God.

1 John 5:1

1 John 5:1 Whosoever believeth that Jesus is the Christ is born of God: and every one that loveth him that begat loveth him also that is begotten of him.

1 John 5:10-13

1 John 5:10 He that believeth on the Son of God hath the witness in himself: he that believeth not God hath made him a liar; because he believeth not the record that God gave of his Son.

1 John 5:11 And this is the record, that God hath given to us eternal life, and this life is in his Son.

1 John 5:12 He that hath the Son hath life; and he that hath not the Son of God hath not life.

1 John 5:13 These things have I written unto you that believe on the name of the Son

of God; that ye may know that ye have eternal life, and that ye may believe on the name of the Son of God.

1 John 5:18

1 John 5:18 We know that whosoever is born of God sinneth not; but he that is begotten of God keepeth himself, and that wicked one toucheth him not.

1 John 5:19

1 John 5:19 And we know that we are of God, and the whole world lieth in wickedness.

1 John 5:20

1 John 5:20 And we know that the Son of God is come, and hath given us an understanding, that we may know him that is true, and we are in him that is true, even in his Son Jesus Christ. This is the true God, and eternal life.

Basic Christian Doctrine

PART SEVEN

Ecclesiology---The Doctrine of the Church

I. The New Testament usage's of the term church.

A. The term is used in the sense of a local assemble of believers.

Acts 15:41

Acts 15:41 And he went through Syria and Cilicia, confirming the churches.

Romans 16:1-14

Read this passage from the Bible.

2 Corinthians 8:1

2 Cor 8:1 Moreover, brethren, we do you to wit of the grace of God bestowed on the

churches of Macedonia;

B. The term is used in a generic sense as relating to all of a class or kind.

Acts 12:1

Acts 12:1 Now about that time Herod the king stretched forth his hands to vex certain of the church.

1 Corinthians 15:9

1 Cor 15:9 For I am the least of the apostles, that am not meet to be called an apostle, because I persecuted the church of God.

Galatians 1:13

Gal 1:13 For ye have heard of my conversation in time past in the Jews' religion, how that beyond measure I persecuted the church of God, and wasted it:

C. The term is used in a secular sense as in an assembly of a town meeting.

Acts 10:32-37

Acts 10:32 Send therefore to Joppa, and call hither Simon, whose surname is Peter; he is lodged in the house of one Simon a tanner by the sea side: who, when he cometh, shall speak unto thee.

Acts 10:33 Immediately therefore I sent to thee; and thou hast well done that thou art come. Now therefore are we all here present before God, to hear all things that are commanded thee of God.

Acts 10:34 Then Peter opened his mouth, and said, Of a truth I perceive that God is no respecter of persons:

Acts 10:35 But in every nation he that feareth him, and worketh righteousness, is accepted with him.

Acts 10:36 The word which God sent unto the children of Israel, preaching peace by Jesus Christ: (he is Lord of all:)

Acts 10:37 That word, I say, ye know, which was published throughout all Judaea, and began from Galilee, after the baptism which John preached;

D. The term is used in the sense of being the body of Christ.

a. The body of Christ is called the church of God.

1 Corinthians 1:2

1 Cor 1:2 Unto the church of God which is at Corinth, to them that are sanctified in Christ Jesus, called to be saints, with all that in every place call upon the name of Jesus Christ our Lord, both theirs and ours:

Acts 20:28

Acts 20:28 Take heed therefore unto yourselves, and to all the flock, over the which the Holy Ghost hath made you overseers, to feed the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood.

b. The body of Christ is called the church of the living God.

1 Timothy 3:5

1 Tim 3:5 (For if a man know not how to rule his own house, how shall he take care of the church of God?)

c. The body of Christ is called the church of the first born.

Hebrews 12:23

Heb 12:23 To the general assembly and church of the firstborn, which are written in heaven, and to God the Judge of all, and to the spirits of just men made perfect,

The first-born refers to those who first received the Gospel of Christ, and who are elsewhere termed the first fruits. This is spoken in allusion to the first-born among the Israelites, who were all considered as the Lord's property, and were dedicated to him. The Jews gave the title "first-born" to those who were very eminent or excellent; what we would term the head or top of his kin. The church of the first-born is the assembly of the most excellent.

Which are written in heaven alludes to those who are enrolled as citizens of the New Jerusalem, and are entitled to all the rights, privileges, and immunities of the church here, and of heaven above. This is spoken in allusion to the custom of enrolling or writing on tables, etc., the names of all the citizens of a particular city; and all those thus registered were considered as having a right to live there, and to enjoy all its privileges. All genuine believers are citizens of heaven. That is their country, and there they have their rights, etc. And every member of Christ has a right to, and can demand, every ordinance in the church of his Redeemer; and woe to him who attempts to prevent them!

II. The origin of the church.

A. The preparation of the original material for the church.

1. It was prepared by a selected man.

Malachi 3:1

Mal 3:1 Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me: and the Lord, whom ye seek, shall suddenly come to his temple, even the messenger of the covenant, whom ye delight in: behold, he shall come, saith the LORD of hosts.

Malachi 4:5

Mal 4:5 Behold, I will send you Elijah the prophet before the coming of the great and dreadful day of the LORD:

Matthew 11:10

Mat 11:10 For this is he, of whom it is written, Behold, I send my messenger before thy face, which shall prepare thy way before thee.

Matthew 11:14

Mat 11:14 And if ye will receive it, this is Elias, which was for to come.

2. It was prepared by a sent man.

John 1:6

John 1:6 There was a man sent from God, whose name was John.

3. It was prepared by a sound man.

Matthew 3:7-8

Mat 3:7 But when he saw many of the Pharisees and Sadducees come to his baptism, he said unto them, O generation of vipers, who hath warned you to flee from the wrath to come?

Mat 3:8 Bring forth therefore fruits meet for repentance:

B. The place of the establishment of the church.

1. A positive fact.

a. The church was not established during the days of Abraham.

Matthew 16:18

Mat 16:18 And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

b. The church was not established on the day of Pentecost.

Acts 2:41

Acts 2:41 Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls.

1) No prophecy is given pointing to Pentecost as to the time for the organization of the church.

2) No Head, shepherd or bishop was present on Pentecost.

a) The Head (Christ) was with the Father in glory.

Luke 24:49-51

Luke 24:49 And, behold, I send the promise of my Father upon you: but tarry ye in the city of Jerusalem, until ye be endued with power from on high.

Luke 24:50 And he led them out as far as to Bethany,
and he lifted up his hands, and blessed them.

Luke 24:51 And it came to pass, while he blessed them, he was parted from them,
and carried up into heaven.

b) The Shepherd was yet to send the
Comforter.

John 14:15-17

John 14:15 If ye love me, keep my commandments.

John 14:16 And I will pray the Father, and he shall give you another Comforter, that
he may abide with you for ever;

John 14:17 Even the Spirit of truth; whom the world cannot receive, because it seeth
him not, neither knoweth him: but ye know him; for he dwelleth with you, and shall
be in you.

c) Peter was not the bishop or pope
of his day. He was a fellow laborer in the Master's vineyard.

1 Corinthians 3:9

1 Cor 3:9 For we are labourers together with God: ye are God's husbandry, ye are
God's building.

2 Corinthians 6:1

2 Cor 6:1 We then, as workers together with him, beseech you also that ye receive
not the grace of God in vain.

1 Thessalonians 3:2

1 Th 3:2 And sent Timotheus, our brother, and minister of God, and our fellowlabourer in the gospel of Christ, to establish you, and to comfort you concerning your faith:

3) No commission to evangelize the world was given on Pentecost. The commission had already been given. Pentecost was the day the church received power to carry out the commission given by Christ.

Acts 1:8

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

c. The church was not established after Pentecost.

d. The church was established during the personal ministry of Jesus Christ by Christ.

1) The church body had been called out prior to Pentecost.

Matthew 4:18-22

Mat 4:18 And Jesus, walking by the sea of Galilee, saw two brethren, Simon called Peter, and Andrew his brother, casting a net into the sea: for they were fishers.

Mat 4:19 And he saith unto them, Follow me, and I will make you fishers of men.

Mat 4:20 And they straightway left their nets, and followed him.

Mat 4:21 And going on from thence, he saw other two brethren, James the son of Zebedee, and John his brother, in a ship with Zebedee their father, mending their nets; and he called them.

Mat 4:22 And they immediately left the ship and their father, and followed him.

Acts 1:15

Acts 1:15 And in those days Peter stood up in the midst of the disciples, and said, (the number of names together were about an hundred and twenty,)

2) Apostles had been set in the church prior to Pentecost and during the personal ministry of Christ.

Luke 6:12-13

Luke 6:12 And it came to pass in those days, that he went out into a mountain to

pray, and continued all night in prayer to God.

Luke 6:13 And when it was day, he called unto him his disciples: and of them he chose twelve, whom also he named apostles;

Ephesians 4:11-13

Eph 4:11 And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers;

Eph 4:12 For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the edifying of the body of Christ:

Eph 4:13 Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the

measure of the stature of the fulness of Christ:

3) The church received her commission
prior to Pentecost during the personal ministry of Christ.

Matthew 28:19-20

Mat 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

Mat 28:20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you always, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

4) The church observed both ordinances
prior to Pentecost during the personal ministry of Christ.

a) The ordinance of baptism was
administered prior to Pentecost during the personal ministry of Christ.

John 4:1-2

John 4:1 When therefore the Lord knew how the Pharisees had heard that Jesus made and baptized more disciples than John,

John 4:2 (Though Jesus himself baptized not, but his disciples,)

b) The ordinance of the Lord's
Supper was administered prior to Pentecost during the personal ministry of Christ.

Matthew 26:26-29

Mat 26:26 And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed it, and brake it, and gave it to the disciples, and said, Take, eat; this is my body.

Mat 26:27 And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink ye all of it;

Mat 26:28 For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.

Mat 26:29 But I say unto you, I will not drink henceforth of this fruit of the vine, until that day when I drink it new with you in my Father's kingdom.

Luke 22:19

Luke 22:19 And he took bread, and gave thanks, and brake it, and gave unto them, saying, This is my body which is given for you: this do in remembrance of me.

5) The church was called “a little flock” prior to Pentecost during the personal ministry of Christ.

Luke 12:32

Luke 12:32 Fear not, little flock; for it is your Father's good pleasure to give you the kingdom.

Acts 20:28

Acts 20:28 Take heed therefore unto yourselves, and to all the flock, over the which the Holy Ghost hath made you overseers, to feed the church of God,

which he hath purchased with his own blood.

6) The church had rules for disciplinary action prior to Pentecost during the personal ministry of Christ.

Matthew 18:15-20

Mat 18:15 Moreover if thy brother shall trespass against thee, go and tell him his fault between thee and him alone: if he shall hear thee, thou hast gained thy brother.

Mat 18:16 But if he will not hear thee, then take with thee one or two more, that in the mouth of two or three witnesses every word may be established.

Mat 18:17 And if he shall neglect to hear them, tell it unto the church: but if he neglect to hear the church, let him be unto thee as a heathen man and a publican.

Mat 18:18 Verily I say unto you, Whatsoever ye shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven.

Mat 18:19 Again I say unto you, That if two of you shall agree on earth as touching a ny thing that they shall ask, it shall be done for them of my Father which is in heaven.

Mat 18:20 For where two or three are gathered together in my name, there am I in the midst of them.

7) The church had an ordained ministry prior to Pentecost during the personal ministry of Christ.

Ephesians 4:11

Eph 4:11 And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists; and some, pastors and teachers;

8) The church had the promise of the presence of Christ prior to Pentecost during the personal ministry of Christ.

Matthew 28:20

Mat 28:20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

9) The church received the promise of Christ's second coming prior to Pentecost during the personal ministry of Christ.

John 14:1-4

John 14:1 Let not your heart be troubled: ye believe in God, believe also in me.

John 14:2 In my Father's house are many mansions: if it were not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you.

John 14:3 And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and receive you unto myself; that where I am, there ye may be also.

John 14:4 And whither I go ye know, and the way ye know.

10) The church had a membership of 120 prior to Pentecost.

Acts 1:15

Acts 1:15 And in those days Peter stood up in the midst of the disciples, and said, (the number of names together were about an hundred and twenty,)

Acts 2:41

Acts 2:41 Then they that gladly received his word were baptized: and the same day there were added unto them about three thousand souls.

11) The church was instructed to remain in Jerusalem until the promise of the Holy Ghost was fulfilled.

Acts 1:4

Acts 1:4 And, being assembled together with them, commanded them that they should not depart from Jerusalem, but wait for the promise of the Father, which, saith he, ye have heard of me.

Acts 1:8

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

2. The probable place.

Bethabara beyond Jordan soon after the baptism of Christ. The four disciples involved were Andrew, Peter, Philip and Nathaniel. These disciples followed Christ to Capernaum, came back to Galilee, went back to their fishing where they heard the call of Jesus to full-time service.

John 3:29

John 3:29 He that hath the bride is the bridegroom: but the friend of the bridegroom, which standeth and heareth him,

rejoiceth greatly because of the bridegroom's voice:
this my joy therefore is fulfilled.

3. The church was organized by a precise Person.

Matthew 16:18

Mat 16:18 And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

- III. The nature of the church.

- A. The church is presently God's kingdom on earth.

1. Christ had a kingdom while He was on earth. The first church was Christ's kingdom established on earth.

Daniel 2:44

Dan 2:44 And in the days of these kings shall the God of heaven set up a kingdom, which shall never be destroyed: and the kingdom shall not be left to other people, but it shall break in pieces and consume all these kingdoms, and it shall stand for ever.
John 18:36

John 18:36 Jesus answered, My kingdom is not of this world: if my kingdom were of this world, then would my servants fight, that I should not be delivered to the Jews: but now is my kingdom not from hence.

2. The elements of the kingdom were in place during Christ's personal ministry on earth.

- a. Christ was the king of His kingdom.

John 18:37

John 18:37 Pilate therefore said unto him, Art thou a king then? Jesus answered, Thou sayest that I am a king. To this end was I born, and for this cause came I into the world, that I should bear witness unto the truth. Every one that is of the truth heareth my voice.

- b. Christ had subjects in His kingdom.

The disciples were His subjects.

John 15:8

John 15:8 Herein is my Father glorified, that ye bear much fruit; so shall ye be my disciples.

- c. Christ gave laws for His kingdom.

The commands of Christ were His laws.

John 14:15

John 15:8 Herein is my Father glorified, that ye bear much fruit; so shall ye be my disciples.

John 15:10

John 15:10 If ye keep my commandments, ye shall abide in my love; even as I have kept my Father's commandments, and abide in his love.

- d. Christ had a territory for His kingdom.
The world is His territory.

Mark 16:15

Mark 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

Acts 1:8-9

Acts 1:8 But ye shall receive power, after that the Holy Ghost is come upon you: and ye shall be witnesses unto me both in Jerusalem, and in all Judaea, and in Samaria, and unto the uttermost part of the earth.

Acts 1:9 And when he had spoken these things, while they beheld, he was taken up; and a cloud received him out of their sight.

3. The kingdom was preached from John the Baptist's day
and men pressed into it.

Luke 16:16

Luke 16:16 The law and the prophets were until John: since that time the kingdom of God is preached, and every man presseth into it.

4. Some were hindered from entering into the kingdom.

Matthew 23:13

Mat 23:13 But woe unto you, scribes and Pharisees, hypocrites! for ye shut up the kingdom of heaven against men: for ye neither go in yourselves, neither suffer ye them that are entering to go in.

5. The kingdom of Christ suffered violence.

Matthew 11:12

Mat 11:12 And from the days of John the Baptist until now the kingdom of heaven suffers violence, and the violent take it by force.

6. Jesus declared His kingdom to be in existence.

Luke 17:21

Luke 17:21 Neither shall they say, Lo here! or, lo there! for, behold, the kingdom of God is within you.

From Matthew Henry's Commentary:

The kingdom of God is within you." It is not of this world, John 18:36. Its glory does not strike men's fancies, but affects their spirits, and its power is over their souls and consciences; from them it receives homage, and not from their bodies only. The kingdom of God will not change men's outward condition, but their hearts and lives. Then it comes when it makes those humble, and serious, and heavenly, that were proud, and vain, and carnal,-- when it weans those from the world that were wedded to the world; and therefore look for the kingdom of God in the revolutions of the heart, not of the civil government. The kingdom of God is among you; so some read it. "You enquire when it

will come, and are not aware that it is already begun to be set up in the midst of you. The gospel is preached, it is confirmed by miracles, it is embraced by multitudes, so that it is in your nation, though not in your hearts." Note, It is the folly of many curious enquirers concerning the times to come that they look for that before them which is already among them.

The kingdom of God was within the disciples, among them, meaning it was in their midst.

7. Christ rebuked people for not repenting and entering into the kingdom.

Matthew 21:31-32

Mat 21:31 Whether of them twain did the will of his father? They say unto him, The first. Jesus saith unto them, Verily I say unto you, That the publicans and the harlots go into the kingdom of God before you.

Mat 21:32 For John came unto you in the way of righteousness, and ye believed him not: but the publicans and the harlots believed him: and ye, when ye had seen it, repented not afterward, that ye might believe him.

8. In fulfillment of prophecy Jesus sang in the church (kingdom) which He had built.

Psalm 22:22

Psa 22:22 I will declare thy name unto my brethren: in the midst of the congregation will I praise thee.

Hebrews 2:12

Heb 2:12 Saying, I will declare thy name unto my brethren, in the midst of the church will I sing praise unto thee.

Matthew 26:30

Mat 26:30 And when they had sung an hymn, they went out into the mount of Olives.

9. The kingdom will be expanded politically at the beginning of Christ 1000 year reign on earth.

Matthew 6:10

Mat 6:10 Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done in earth, as it is in heaven.

Revelation 11:15

Rev 11:15 And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.

B. The church is not universal and invisible composed of all the saved.

The church should be viewed as congregational and not denominational.

1. The term ecclesia means an assemble. A universal, invisible church could not assemble.
2. A vast majority of Bible verses which use the term ecclesia refers to churches in a particular place as in a house, city, several churches in a province but nowhere as a church of a province.
3. The epistles are written to local, visible churches and not to local manifestations of an invisible church.
4. The purpose of the church is to manifest the glory of Christ in the world demanding a local visible body. An invisible body would be an abject failure.

Matthew 5:16

Mat 5:16 Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven.

Ephesians 3:21

Eph 3:21 Unto him be glory in the church by Christ Jesus throughout all ages, world without end. Amen.

5. The prophecy of Jesus singing in the church demands a local, visible body.

Hebrews 2:11-12

Heb 2:11 For both he that sanctifieth and they who are sanctified are all of one: for which cause he is not ashamed to call them brethren,

Heb 2:12 Saying, I will declare thy name unto my brethren, in the midst of the church will I sing praise unto thee.

6. Symbols of the church show her to be local and visible.

a. Each church is symbolized as a body of Christ.

1 Corinthians 12:12-17

1 Cor 12:12 For as the body is one, and hath many members, and all the members of that one body, being many, are one body: so also is Christ.

1 Cor 12:13 For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.

1 Cor 12:14 For the body is not one member, but many.

1 Cor 12:15 If the foot shall say, Because I am not the hand, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body?

1 Cor 12:16 And if the ear shall say, Because I am not the eye, I am not of the body; is it therefore not of the body?

1 Cor 12:17 If the whole body were an eye, where were the hearing? If the whole were hearing, where were the smelling?

1) The church is the body of a kind.

Matthew 16:18

Mat 16:18 And I say also unto thee, That thou art Peter, and upon this rock I will build my church; and the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

Ephesians 4:4-6

Eph 4:4 There is one body, and one Spirit, even as ye are called in one hope of your calling;

Eph 4:5 One Lord, one faith, one baptism,

Eph 4:6 One God and Father of all, who is above all, and through all, and in you all.

Colossians 1:24

Col 1:24 Who now rejoice in my sufferings for you, and fill up that which is behind of the afflictions of Christ in my flesh for his body's sake, which is the church:

2) The kind is local and visible.

Christ does not have two bodies as proponents of the universal, invisible concept would have people believe. Their concept is there is one church which is local and visible while the other is universal and invisible.

b. The church is symbolized as a flock.

Luke 12:32

Luke 12:32 Fear not, little flock; for it is your Father's good pleasure to give you the kingdom.

Acts 20:28

Acts 20:28 Take heed therefore unto yourselves, and to all the flock, over the which the Holy Ghost hath made you overseers, to feed the church of God, which he hath purchased with his own blood.

c. The church is symbolized as a house.

1 Timothy 3:15

1 Tim 3:15 But if I tarry long, that thou mayest know how thou oughtest to behave thyself in the house of God, which is the church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth.

1 Corinthians 3:11

1 Cor 3:11 For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ.

d. The church is symbolized as a candlestick.

Matthew 5:14-16

Mat 5:14 Ye are the light of the world. A city that is set on an hill cannot be hid.

Mat 5:15 Neither do men light a candle, and put it under a bushel, but on a candlestick; and it giveth light unto all that are in the house.

Mat 5:16 Let your light so shine before men, that they may see your good works, and glorify your Father which is in heaven.

Revelation 1:12-13

Rev 1:12 And I turned to see the voice that spake with me. And being turned, I saw seven golden candlesticks;

Rev 1:13 And in the midst of the seven candlesticks one like unto the Son of man, clothed with a garment down to the foot, and girt about the paps with a golden girdle.

e. The church is symbolized as the bride of Christ.

John 3:29

John 3:29 He that hath the bride is the bridegroom: but the friend of the bridegroom, which standeth and heareth him, rejoiceth greatly because of the bridegroom's voice: this my joy therefore is fulfilled.

2 Corinthians 11:2

2 Cor 11:2 For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ.

1) The bride will be constituted of all the true churches of this age.

2) This does not constitute a universal, invisible church since it can not be called an ecclesia until it is assembled after the rapture

f. The church is symbolized as the pillar and ground of the truth.

1 Timothy 3:15

1 Tim 3:15 But if I tarry long, that thou mayest know how thou oughtest to behave thyself in the house of God, which is the church of the living God, the pillar and ground of the truth.

1) A pillar is local and performs an important function keeping a roof or building from falling down.

2) The church supports something. The church supports the truth.

g. The church is symbolized as a building.

Ephesians 2:20-22

Eph 2:20 And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone;

Eph 2:21 In whom all the building fitly framed together groweth unto an holy temple in the Lord:

Eph 2:22 In whom ye also are builded together for an habitation of God through the Spirit.

- 1) The foundation of the church.

Ephesians 2:20

Eph 2:20 And are built upon the foundation of the apostles and prophets, Jesus Christ himself being the chief corner stone;

- 2) The composition of the church.

Ephesians 2:13-14

Eph 2:13 But now in Christ Jesus ye who sometimes were far off are made nigh by the blood of Christ.

Eph 2:14 For he is our peace, who hath made both one, and hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us;

1 Peter 2:5

1 Pet 2:5 Ye also, as lively stones, are built up a spiritual house, an holy priesthood, to offer up spiritual sacrifices, acceptable to God by Jesus Christ.

- 3) The architect and builder of the church.

1 Corinthians 12:13

1 Cor 12:13 For by one Spirit are we all baptized into one body, whether we be

Jews or Gentiles, whether we be bond or free; and have been all made to drink into one Spirit.

Ephesians 2:1

Eph 2:1 And you hath he quickened, who were dead in trespasses and sins:

Ephesians 2:5-6

Eph 2:5 Even when we were dead in sins, hath quickened us together with Christ, (by grace ye are saved;)

Eph 2:6 And hath raised us up together, and made us sit together in heavenly places in Christ Jesus:

h. The church is espoused to Christ.

Ephesians 5:29-32

Eph 5:29 For no man ever yet hated his own flesh; but nourisheth and cherisheth it, even as the Lord the church:

Eph 5:30 For we are members of his body, of his flesh, and of his bones.

Eph 5:31 For this cause shall a man leave his father and mother, and shall be joined unto his wife, and they two shall be one flesh.

Eph 5:32 This is a great mystery: but I speak concerning Christ and the church.

Revelation 19:6-9

Rev 19:6 And I heard as it were the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of mighty thunderings, saying, Alleluia: for the Lord God omnipotent reigneth.

Rev 19:7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.

Rev 19:8 And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints.

Rev 19:9 And he saith unto me, Write, Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb. And he saith unto me, These are the true sayings of God.

IV. The constitution and organization of the church.

In order for the church to serve effectively there must be laws and regulations to govern it. These laws and regulations must not be man-made but God-made laws.

A. The officer of the church.

1. The pastor-teacher sometimes called elder or bishop.

There is no deacon or office bearing the title Deacon.

Two Greek words are given for the minister. The word “presbuteros” meaning elder and the word “episcopos” meaning overseer. The word “elder” or “presbyter” refers to the rank or dignity of the minister. The word “bishop” refers to the function or duty of the minister. There is no evidence in the Scriptures of any ordained person ranking higher than any other.

Acts 20:17-18

Acts 20:17 And from Miletus he sent to Ephesus, and called the elders of the church.

Acts 20:18 And when they were come to him, he said unto them, Ye know, from the first day that I came into Asia, after what manner I have been with you at all seasons,

Philippians 1:1

Phil 1:1 Paul and Timotheus, the servants of Jesus Christ, to all the saints in Christ Jesus which are at Philippi, with the bishops and deacons:

1 Timothy 3:1

1 Tim 3:1 This is a true saying, If a man desire the office of a bishop, he desireth a good work.

Titus 1:5

Titus 1:5 For this cause left I thee in Crete, that thou shouldest set in order the things that are wanting, and ordain elders in every city, as I had appointed thee:

1 Peter 5:1-3

1 Pet 5:1 The elders which are among you I exhort, who am also an elder, and a witness of the sufferings of Christ, and also a partaker of the glory that shall be revealed:

1 Pet 5:2 Feed the flock of God which is among you, taking the oversight thereof, not by constraint, but willingly; not for filthy lucre, but of a ready mind;

1 Pet 5:3 Neither as being lords over God's heritage, but being ensamples to the flock.

a. Ordination of the minister is the setting apart by the church of those divinely called.

Acts 13:1-2

Acts 13:1 Now there were in the church that was at Antioch certain prophets and teachers; as Barnabas, and Simeon that was called Niger, and Lucius of Cyrene, and Manaen, which had been brought up with Herod the tetrarch, and Saul.

Acts 13:2 As they ministered to the Lord, and fasted, the Holy Ghost said, Separate me Barnabas and Saul for the work whereunto I have called them.

1 Corinthians 9:16

1 Cor 9:16 For though I preach the gospel, I have nothing to glory of: for necessity is laid upon me; yea, woe is unto me, if I preach not the gospel!

b. Qualifications of the minister.

1 Timothy 3:1-7

Read this passage from the Bible.

- 1) Without reproach (blameless)
- 2) Husband of one wife. Divorced and remarried men disqualify themselves if their ex-wife is still living.
- 3) Vigilant (watchful, guarded, alert, observant, attentive, careful, awake). They must be on guard all the time for the benefit and good of the church.
- 4) Sober (temperate, abstinent).
- 5) Of good behavior.
- 6) Given to hospitality.
- 7) Apt to teach. Every called elder received the gifts of pastoring and teaching. If the pastor can not teach the church does not need him.
- 8) Not given to wine.
- 9) Not greedy of filthy lucre.
- 10) Patient.
- 11) Not a brawler.
- 12) Not covetous.
- 13) One that ruleth well his own house.
- 14) Not a novice (beginner, amateur,

apprentice, freshman, rookie).

15) Have a good report of them without
(meaning those not Christian, not of the faith).

c. Duties of the minister.

1) To instruct the members of the church in
Christian truth.

Acts 20:31

Acts 20:31 Therefore watch, and remember, that by the space of three years I ceased
not to warn every one night and day with tears.

1 Thessalonians 5:12

1 Th 5:12 And we beseech you, brethren, to know them which labour among you,
and are over you in the Lord, and admonish you;

1 Th 5:13 And to esteem them very highly in love for their work's sake. And be at
peace among yourselves.

Ephesians 4:11-12

Eph 4:11 And he gave some, apostles; and some, prophets; and some, evangelists;
and some, pastors and teachers;

Eph 4:12 For the perfecting of the saints, for the work of the ministry, for the
edifying of the body of Christ:

2) To administer the ordinances of the
church.

Matthew 28:19-20

Mat 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations,
baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

Mat 28:20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you:
and, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

3) To prepare himself to carry out his
duties.

Acts 6:2-4

Acts 6:2 Then the twelve called the multitude of the disciples unto them, and said, It
is not reason that we should leave the word of God, and serve tables.

Acts 6:3 Wherefore, brethren, look ye out among you seven men of honest report,
full of the Holy Ghost and wisdom, whom we may appoint over this business.

Acts 6:4 But we will give ourselves continually to prayer, and to the ministry of the
word.

2. Many believe there is another officer in the church and that
officer is the deacon. I must here give an apology to the many folks who
have heard me teach that there is an office of deacon in the New
Testament church and a man called deacon. Upon examination of
Scripture rather than what I had always accepted without
question, I was made to understand that the man “deacon” and the
office of deacon are doctrines of men rather than New Testament
doctrine. All the rubber-stamping of what someone else said has been
removed from this work. “The Office Of Deacon – A Perpetrated
Hoax – Fact Or Fiction” is being added as an addendum beginning
on page 461. I encourage you to read the Deacon addition with an
eye on the Word of God rather than tradition, practice or custom.

B. The ordinances of the church (that which is ordered).

1. The ordinance of Baptism.

a. The authority for the observance of baptism.

1) Baptism is commanded by Christ.

Matthew 28:19

Mat 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

2) Baptism is sanctioned by the apostles.

Acts 2:38

Acts 2:38 Then Peter said unto them, Repent, and be baptized every one of you in the name of Jesus Christ for the remission of sins, and ye shall receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.

From Adam Clarke Commentary:

In reference to the remission or removal of sins: baptism pointing out the purifying influences of the Holy Spirit; and it is in reference to that purification that it is administered, and should in consideration never be separated from it. For baptism itself purifies not the conscience; it only points out the grace by which this is to be done.

A note in regard to the word “for” in Acts 2:38.

Many teach the word “for” to mean “in order to receive the remission of sin which takes saving grace out of the hands of God and places it upon the act of man. A better rendering of the word “for” is because meaning be baptized

because of the remission of sin which is consistent with the teaching of the Scripture that salvation precedes baptism.

3) Baptism was practiced by the early church.

Acts 8:12

Acts 8:12 But when they believed Philip preaching the things concerning the kingdom of God, and the name of Jesus Christ, they were baptized, both men and women.

Note carefully that saving faith preceded the act of baptism. Note also that Philip, a minister/servant, was also a preacher. The lesson to be learned from this is that the minister/servant must be able to preach as well as perform his other duties in the church.

Acts 10:47-48

Acts 10:47 Can any man forbid water, that these should not be baptized, which have received the Holy Ghost as well as we?

Acts 10:48 And he commanded them to be baptized in the name of the Lord. Then prayed they him to tarry certain days.

b. The significance of baptism.

Baptism is an external indication of an internal change including:

1) The believer's union with Christ.

Galatians 3:26-27

Gal 3:26 For ye are all the children of God by faith in Christ Jesus.

Gal 3:27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.

(This is the baptism of the Holy Spirit, not water baptism).

Colossians 2:11-12

Col 2:11 In whom also ye are circumcised with the circumcision made without hands, in putting off the body of the sins of the flesh by the circumcision of Christ:

Col 2:12 Buried with him in baptism, wherein also ye are risen with him through the faith of the operation of God, who hath raised him from the dead.

2) The believer's sins removed through the death of Christ.

Romans 6:4-5

Rom 6:4 Therefore we are buried with him by baptism into death: that like as Christ was raised up from the dead by the glory of the Father, even so we also should walk in newness of life.

Rom 6:5 For if we have been planted together in the likeness of his death, we shall be also in the likeness of his resurrection:

3) The believer's subjection to the Lordship of Christ.

The Lordship of Christ refers to the enthronement of Christ the Lord of the believer's life.

Galatians 3:27

Gal 3:27 For as many of you as have been baptized into Christ have put on Christ.

2. The ordinance of the Lord's Supper.

a. The elements of the Lord's Supper are unleavened bread and fruit of the vine.

Luke 22:18-20

Luke 22:18 For I say unto you, I will not drink of the fruit of the vine, until the kingdom of God shall come.

Luke 22:19 And he took bread, and gave thanks, and brake it, and gave unto them, saying, This is my body which is given for you: this do in remembrance of me.

Luke 22:20 Likewise also the cup after supper, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood, which is shed for you.

b. Authority for the observance.

1) It was instituted in the church by Christ.

(The church were met in the upper room).

Luke 22:19-20

Luke 22:19 And he took bread, and gave thanks, and brake it, and gave unto them, saying, This is my body which is given for you: this do in remembrance of me.

Luke 22:20 Likewise also the cup after supper, saying, This cup is the new testament in my blood, which is shed for you.

Matthew 26:26-30

Mat 26:26 And as they were eating, Jesus took bread, and blessed it, and brake it, and gave it to the disciples, and said, Take, eat; this is my body.

Mat 26:27 And he took the cup, and gave thanks, and gave it to them, saying, Drink ye all of it;

Mat 26:28 For this is my blood of the new testament, which is shed for many for the remission of sins.

Mat 26:29 But I say unto you, I will not drink henceforth of this fruit of the vine, until that day when I drink it new with you in my Father's kingdom.

Mat 26:30 And when they had sung an hymn, they went out into the mount of Olives.

2) It was commanded by Christ.

(The Lord's Supper is a command, not an option).

Luke 22:19

Luke 22:19 And he took bread, and gave thanks, and brake it, and gave unto them, saying, This is my body which is given for you: this do in remembrance of me.

3) It was sanctioned by Paul the Apostle.

1 Corinthians 11:23-28

Read this passage from the Bible.

c. Pre-requisites for observance of the Lord's Supper.

1) The participant must be regenerated.

John 3:3

John 3:3 Jesus answered and said unto him, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God.

John 3:5

John 3:5 Jesus answered, Verily, verily, I say unto thee, Except a man be born of water and of the Spirit, he cannot enter into the kingdom of God.

1 Corinthians 2:14

1 Cor 2:14 But the natural man receiveth not the things of the Spirit of God: for they are foolishness unto him: neither can he know them, because they are spiritually

discerned.

2) The participant must be walking orderly.

1 Corinthians 11:28-30

1 Cor 11:28 But let a man examine himself, and so let him eat of that bread, and drink of that cup.

1 Cor 11:29 For he that eateth and drinketh unworthily, eateth and drinketh damnation to himself, not discerning the Lord's body.

1 Cor 11:30 For this cause many are weak and sickly among you, and many sleep.

3) The participant must be a member of a local church.

1 Corinthians 5:11

1 Cor 5:11 But now I have written unto you not to keep company, if any man

that is called a brother be a fornicator, or covetous, or an idolater, or a railer, or a drunkard, or an extortioner; with such an one no not to eat.

(The inference is upon a local church for how could the church know of the conduct of the individual observing the Supper if he or she came from somewhere else)?

C. The worship of the church.

1. The primary purpose of the church meeting is to pay homage to God through praise and giving Him the glory.

Ephesians 3:21

Eph 3:21 Unto him be glory in the church by Christ Jesus throughout all ages, world without end. Amen.

2. The worship of the early church consisted mainly of:

a. Reading the Scriptures.

1 Thessalonians 5:27

1 Th 5:27 I charge you by the Lord that this epistle be read unto all the holy brethren.

Acts 13:15

Acts 13:15 And after the reading of the law and the prophets the rulers of the synagogue sent unto them, saying, Ye men and brethren, if ye have any word of exhortation for the people, say on.

James 1:22

James 1:22 But be ye doers of the word, and not hearers only, deceiving your own selves.

b. Prayers.

Romans 1:9

Rom 1:9 For God is my witness, whom I serve with my spirit in the gospel of his Son, that without ceasing I make mention of you always in my prayers;

1 Timothy 2:1-3

1 Tim 2:1 I exhort therefore, that, first of all, supplications, prayers, intercessions, and giving of thanks, be made for all men;

1 Tim 2:2 For kings, and for all that are in authority; that we may lead a quiet and peaceable life in all godliness and honesty.

1 Tim 2:3 For this is good and acceptable in the sight of God our Saviour;

c. Singing.

Ephesians 5:19

Eph 5:19 Speaking to yourselves in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing and making melody in your heart to the Lord;

Colossians 3:16

Col 3:16 Let the word of Christ dwell in you richly in all wisdom; teaching and admonishing one another in psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, singing with grace in your hearts to the Lord.

d. Preaching.

Mark 16:15

Mark 16:15 And he said unto them, Go ye into all the world, and preach the gospel to every creature.

2 Timothy 4:2

2 Tim 4:2 Preach the word; be instant in season, out of season; reprove, rebuke, exhort with all longsuffering and doctrine.

e. Alms (charity, assistance, gifts for the poor, offerings) giving.

1 Corinthians 16:1-2

1 Cor 16:1 Now concerning the collection for the saints, as I have given order to the churches of Galatia, even so do ye.

1 Cor 16:2 Upon the first day of the week let every one of you lay by him in store, as God hath prospered him, that there be no gatherings when I come.

D. The mission of the church.

1. To reveal the purpose of God and to inform the world.

Ephesians 3:7-9

Eph 3:7 Whereof I was made a minister, according to the gift of the grace of God given unto me by the effectual working of his power.

Eph 3:8 Unto me, who am less than the least of all saints, is this grace given, that I should preach among the Gentiles the unsearchable riches of Christ;

Eph 3:9 And to make all men see what is the fellowship of the mystery, which from the beginning of the world hath been hid in God, who created all things by Jesus Christ:

2. To witness to Christ's saving grace.

Acts 26:22

Acts 26:22 Having therefore obtained help of God, I continue unto this day, witnessing both to small and great, saying none other things than those which the prophets and Moses did say should come:

3. To develop spiritually those who received Jesus.

Matthew 28:19-20

Mat 28:19 Go ye therefore, and teach all nations, baptizing them in the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost:

Mat 28:20 Teaching them to observe all things whatsoever I have commanded you: and, lo, I am with you alway, even unto the end of the world. Amen.

4. To engage in teaching.

Acts 15:35

Acts 15:35 Paul also and Barnabas continued in Antioch, teaching and preaching the word of the Lord, with many others also.

Acts 18:11

Acts 18:11 And he continued there a year and six months, teaching the word of God among them.

5. To be given to edification.

Romans 15:2

Rom 15:2 Let every one of us please his neighbour for his good to edification.

2 Corinthians 10:8

2 Cor 10:8 For though I should boast somewhat more of our authority, which the Lord hath given us for edification, and not for your destruction, I should not be ashamed:

2 Corinthians 12:19

2 Cor 12:19 Again, think ye that we excuse ourselves unto you? we speak before God in Christ: but we do all things, dearly beloved, for your edifying.

E. The walk of the church.

1. It is to be a walk in unity.

Ephesians 4:1-16

Read this passage from the Bible.

2. The virtues essential to unity.

Ephesians 4:1-3

Eph 4:1 I therefore, the prisoner of the Lord, beseech you that ye walk worthy of the vocation wherewith ye are called,

Eph 4:2 With all lowliness and meekness, with longsuffering, forbearing one another in love;

Eph 4:3 Endeavouring to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace.

3. It is to be a walk in holiness.

Colossians 2:6

Col 2:6 As ye have therefore received Christ Jesus the Lord, so walk ye in him:

1 Thessalonians 4:1

1 Th 4:1 Furthermore then we beseech you, brethren, and exhort you by the Lord Jesus, that as ye have received of us how ye ought to walk and to please God, so ye would abound more and more.

1 John 2:6

1 John 2:6 He that saith he abideth in him ought himself also so to walk, even as he walked.

F. The destiny of the church.

1. It is to be conformed to Christ.

The church should be such that when people want to know what God is like they will look at the church.

Romans 8:29

Rom 8:29 For whom he did foreknow, he also did predestinate to be conformed to the image of his Son, that he might be the firstborn among many brethren.

2. It is to be rewarded by Christ.

2 Corinthians 5:10

2 Cor 5:10 For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad.

3. It is to be presented to Christ to be His bride.

Ephesians 5:27

Eph 5:27 That he might present it to himself a glorious church, not having spot, or wrinkle, or any such thing; but that it should be holy and without blemish.

Revelation 19:7-8

Rev 19:7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.

Rev 19:8 And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints.

4. It is to take part in the marriage supper of the Lamb.

Revelation 19:9

Rev 19:9 And he saith unto me, Write, Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb. And he saith unto me, These are the true sayings of God.

5. It is to enjoy joint-heirship with Christ.

Romans 8:17-18

Rom 8:17 And if children, then heirs; heirs of God, and joint-heirs with Christ; if so be that we suffer with him, that we may be also glorified together.

Rom 8:18 For I reckon that the sufferings of this present time are not worthy to be compared with the glory which shall be revealed in us.

6. It is to be exalted to a place of royalty with Christ.
1 Corinthians 6:2-3

1 Cor 6:2 Do ye not know that the saints shall judge the world? and if the world shall be judged by you, are ye unworthy to judge the smallest matters?

1 Cor 6:3 Know ye not that we shall judge angels? how much more things that pertain to this life?

Revelation 19:6

Rev 19:6 And I heard as it were the voice of a great multitude, and as the voice of many waters, and as the voice of mighty thunderings, saying, Alleluia: for the Lord God omnipotent reigneth.

Basic Christian Doctrine

PART EIGHT

Eschatology---The Doctrine of Last Things

I. The dispensations.

Dispensation defined: A dispensation in Scripture is a period of time in or during which mankind is tested in respect of obedience to some specific revelation of God's will.

There are seven specific dispensations cited in the Scripture.

A. The dispensation of Innocence.

Genesis 2:17

Gen 2:17 But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.

1. The test---The tree of life.

Genesis 2:17

Gen 2:17 But of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, thou shalt not eat of it: for in the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die.

2. The failure---Took of the tree.

Genesis 3:6

Gen 3:6 And when the woman saw that the tree was good for food, and that it was pleasant to the eyes, and a tree to be desired to make one wise, she took of the fruit thereof, and did eat, and gave also unto her husband with her; and he did eat.

3. The result---Lost innocence and fellowship with God.

Genesis 3:24

Gen 3:24 So he drove out the man; and he placed at the east of the garden of Eden Cherubims, and a flaming sword which turned every way, to keep the way of the tree of life.

B.. The dispensation of conscience (The Ante-Deluvian period).
Prior to the flood.

1. The test---Was man to live for God guided by his awakened conscience?

Genesis 4:7

Gen 4:7 If thou doest well, shalt thou not be accepted? and if thou doest not well, sin lieth at the door. And unto thee shall be his desire, and thou shalt rule over him.

2. The failure---Cain offered an unacceptable offering to God and then slew his brother.

Genesis 4:3-5

Gen 4:3 And in process of time it came to pass, that Cain brought of the fruit of the ground an offering unto the LORD.

Gen 4:4 And Abel, he also brought of the firstlings of his flock and of the fat thereof. And the LORD had respect unto Abel and to his offering:

Gen 4:5 But unto Cain and to his offering he had not respect. And Cain was very wroth, and his countenance fell.

Genesis 4:8

Gen 4:8 And Cain talked with Abel his brother: and it came to pass, when they were in the field, that Cain rose up against Abel his brother, and slew him.

3. The result (the deluge---flood).

Genesis 7:10-12

Gen 7:10 And it came to pass after seven days, that the waters of the flood were upon the earth.

Gen 7:11 In the six hundredth year of Noah's life, in the second month, the seventeenth day of the month, the same day were all the fountains of the great deep broken up, and the windows of heaven were opened.

Gen 7:12 And the rain was upon the earth forty days and forty nights.

C. The dispensation of human government (The post-Deluvian period).

1. The test---Man was to rule for God and were to be directed by God to follow and live by just and holy laws. Murderers were to be legally executed. This is the highest function of government and it implies every lesser function.

2. The failure---Man made a great federation and erected a tower for the purpose of idol worship.

Genesis 11:4-5

Gen 11:4 And they said, Go to, let us build us a city and a tower, whose top may reach unto heaven; and let us make us a name, lest we be scattered abroad upon the face of the whole earth.

Gen 11:5 And the LORD came down to see the city and the tower, which the children of men builded.

3. The result---Man's language was confounded.

Genesis 11:7-9

Gen 11:7 Go to, let us go down, and there confound their language, that they may not understand one another's speech.

Gen 11:8 So the LORD scattered them abroad from thence upon the face of all the earth: and they left off to build the city.

Gen 11:9 Therefore is the name of it called Babel; because the LORD did there confound the language of all the earth: and from thence did the LORD scatter them abroad upon the face of all the earth.

D. The dispensation of promise (The Patriarchal period).

Genesis 17:1

Gen 17:1 And when Abram was ninety years old and nine, the LORD appeared to Abram, and said unto him, I am the Almighty God; walk before me, and be thou perfect.

1. The test---Abraham was to leave his home, relatives and friends and go to a strange land which God promised to give him. Abraham was to remain in this land. God also promised Abraham numerous posterity and blessing.

Genesis 12:1-4

Gen 12:1 Now the LORD had said unto Abram, Get thee out of thy country, and from thy kindred, and from thy father's house, unto a land that I will show thee:

Gen 12:2 And I will make of thee a great nation, and I will bless thee, and make thy name great; and thou shalt be a blessing:

Gen 12:3 And I will bless them that bless thee, and curse him that curseth thee: and in thee shall all families of the earth be blessed.

Gen 12:4 So Abram departed, as the LORD had spoken unto him; and Lot went with him: and Abram was seventy and five years old when he departed out of Haran.

Genesis 17:1-7

Gen 17:1 And when Abram was ninety years old and nine, the LORD appeared to Abram, and said unto him,

I am the Almighty God; walk before me, and be thou perfect.

Gen 17:2 And I will make my covenant between me and thee, and will multiply thee exceedingly.

Gen 17:3 And Abram fell on his face: and God talked with him, saying,

Gen 17:4 As for me, behold, my covenant is with thee, and thou shalt be a father of many nations.

Gen 17:5 Neither shall thy name any more be called Abram, but thy name shall be Abraham; for a father of many nations have I made thee.

Gen 17:6 And I will make thee exceeding fruitful, and I will make nations of thee, and kings shall come out of thee.

Gen 17:7 And I will establish my covenant between me and thee and thy seed after thee in their generations for an everlasting covenant, to be a God unto thee, and to thy seed after thee.

2. The failure---Famine came to Canaan and Abraham's descendants left the land given them of God to go down to Egypt.

Genesis 42:1-3

Gen 42:1 Now when Jacob saw that there was corn in Egypt, Jacob said unto his sons, Why do ye look one upon another?

Gen 42:2 And he said, Behold, I have heard that there is corn in Egypt: get you down thither, and buy for us from thence; that we may live, and not die.

Gen 42:3 And Joseph's ten brethren went down to buy corn in Egypt.

3. The result---Persecution from the Egyptians and subsequent deliverance by God.

E. The dispensation of law (The Mosaic Law).

1. The test---A covenant of works which the people accepted but could not keep.
2. The failure---Consistent failure from Sinai until the crucifixion.
3. The result---The same Romans who crucified Jesus burned Jerusalem destroyed the Temple and scattered the Jewish people over the face of the earth. The dispensation of law proved legal prescription can not make men seek after God nor animal sacrifices change the heart of man.

F. The dispensation of grace (The church age).

1. The test---The offer of salvation to every man through Jesus Christ by means of the plan enacted in eternity past.

John 1:17

John 1:17 For the law was given by Moses, but grace and truth came by Jesus Christ.

Romans 5:20-21

Rom 5:20 Moreover the law entered, that the offence might abound. But where sin abounded, grace did much more abound:

Rom 5:21 That as sin hath reigned unto death, even so might grace reign through righteousness unto eternal life by Jesus Christ our Lord.

2. The failure---The majority will not receive Jesus and many making professions of faith depart from the faith.

Matthew 7:13-14

Mat 7:13 Enter ye in at the strait gate: for wide is the gate, and broad is the way, that leadeth to destruction, and many there be which go in thereat:

Mat 7:14 Because strait is the gate, and narrow is the way, which leadeth unto life, and few there be that find it.

3. The result---God will call out His saints from the earth, take them home to be with Him and turn the earth's population over to the tribulation which is to come. As law did not convert the world, neither does grace. Man rejected law and man rejected grace.

G. The dispensation of the Kingdom (The Millennium).

Ephesians 1:10

Eph 1:10 That in the dispensation of the fulness of times he might gather together in

one all things in Christ, both which are in heaven, and which are on earth; even in him:

1. The test---Christ will rule by Person forcing all upon earth to live lives of obedience to Him. Sin will be put down by a rod of iron.
2. The result---The hypocrisy of many feigning obedience will be evident at the close of the millennium reign of Christ. When Christ allows Satan to appear again for a short season there will be great numbers to align themselves with Satan against Christ.
3. The result---Judgment will come upon the new rebellion and Satan will be cast into the lake of fire. The Kingdom like law and grace does not succeed in making the world righteous. Only the grace of God in the individual heart can change the life permanently in any age. Since all will not receive that grace---all will not be saved.

II. The second coming of Christ.

A. Things not constituting the second coming.

1. Death.
 - a. At death the believer goes to be with the Lord.

Ecclesiastes 1:9-11

Eccl 1:9 The thing that hath been, it is that which shall be; and that which is done is that

which shall be done: and there is no new thing under the sun.

Eccl 1:10 Is there any thing whereof it may be said, See, this is new? it hath been already of old time, which was before us.

Eccl 1:11 There is no remembrance of former things; neither shall there be any remembrance of things that are to come with those that shall come after.

b. At the rapture Christ comes for the believer.

1 Thessalonians 4:16-17

1 Th 4:16 For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first:

1 Th 4:17 Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.

2. The coming of the Holy Spirit.

The Holy Spirit is a distinct Person; therefore, His coming was not the second coming of Christ.

3. The new birth.

The body of the believer will be changed at the second coming. Only the spirit is changed in the new birth.

4. The second coming was not the destruction of Jerusalem. Scripture written after the destruction of Jerusalem verify the second coming to be future.

Luke 21:6

Luke 21:6 As for these things which ye behold, the days will come, in the which there shall not be left one stone upon another, that shall not be thrown down.

Luke 21:28

Luke 21:28 And when these things begin to come to pass, then look up, and lift up your heads; for your redemption draweth nigh.

Revelation 22:20

Rev 22:20 He which testifieth these things saith, Surely I come quickly. Amen. Even so, come, Lord Jesus.

B. The facts of the second coming.

1. The testimony of Jesus.

a. His testimony to His disciples as they were going from the upper room where the Lord's Supper had been instituted to the garden of Gethsemane.

John 14:1-3

John 14:1 Let not your heart be troubled: ye believe in God, believe also in me.

John 14:2 In my Father's house are many mansions: if it were not so, I would have told you. I go to prepare a place for you.

John 14:3 And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and receive you unto myself; that where I am, there ye may be also.

b. The lament of Jesus over Jerusalem.

Matthew 23:39

Mat 23:39 For I say unto you, Ye shall not see me henceforth, till ye shall say, Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord.

c. In answering the disciple's questions regarding the second coming.

Matthew 24:3

Mat 24:3 And as he sat upon the mount of Olives, the disciples came unto him privately, saying, Tell us, when shall these things be? and what shall be the sign of thy coming, and of the end of the world?

d. In answering the high priest.

Matthew 26:53

Mat 26:53 Thinkest thou that I cannot now pray to my Father, and he shall presently give me more than twelve legions of angels?

Matthew 26:64

Mat 26:64 Jesus saith unto him, Thou hast said: nevertheless I say unto you, Hereafter shall ye see the Son of man sitting on the right hand of power, and coming in the clouds of heaven.

2. The testimony of Enoch.

Jude 1:24

Jude 1:24 Now unto him that is able to keep you from falling, and to present you faultless before the presence of his glory with exceeding joy,

3. The testimony of Moses.

Deuteronomy 30:1-10

Read this passage from the Bible.

4. The testimony of David.

Psalms 96:13

Psa 96:13 Before the LORD: for he cometh, for he cometh to judge the earth: he shall judge the world with righteousness, and the people with his truth.

Psalms 102:16

Psa 102:16 When the LORD shall build up Zion, he shall appear in his glory.

5. The testimony of Isaiah.

Isaiah 25:8-9

Isa 25:8 He will swallow up death in victory; and the Lord GOD will wipe away tears from off all faces; and the rebuke of his people shall he take away from off all the earth: for the LORD hath spoken it.

Isa 25:9 And it shall be said in that day, Lo, this is our God; we have waited for him,

and he will save us: this is the LORD; we have waited for him, we will be glad and rejoice in his salvation.

Isaiah 26:21

Isa 26:21 For, behold, the LORD cometh out of his place to punish the inhabitants of the earth for their iniquity: the earth also shall disclose her blood, and shall no more cover her slain.

Isaiah 35:4

Isa 35:4 Say to them that are of a fearful heart, Be strong, fear not: behold, your God will come with vengeance, even God with a recompense; he will come and save you.

Isaiah 40:10

Isa 40:10 Behold, the Lord GOD will come with strong hand, and his arm shall rule for him: behold, his reward is with him, and his work before him.

Isaiah 66:15

Isa 66:15 For, behold, the LORD will come with fire, and with his chariots like a whirlwind, to render his anger with fury, and his rebuke with flames of fire.

6. The testimony of Daniel.

Daniel 7:9-15

Dan 7:9 I beheld till the thrones were cast down, and the Ancient of days did sit, whose garment was white as snow, and the hair of his head like the pure wool: his throne was like the fiery flame, and his wheels as burning fire.

Dan 7:10 A fiery stream issued and came forth from before him: thousand thousands ministered unto him, and ten thousand times ten thousand stood before him: the judgment was set, and the books were opened.

Dan 7:11 I beheld then because of the voice of the great words which the horn spake: I beheld even till the beast was slain, and his body destroyed, and given to the burning flame.

Dan 7:12 As concerning the rest of the beasts, they had their dominion taken away: yet their lives were prolonged for a season and time.

Dan 7:13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him.

Dan 7:14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.

Dan 7:15 I Daniel was grieved in my spirit in the midst of my body, and the visions of my head troubled me.

7. The testimony of Zechariah.
Zechariah 14:4-7

Zec 14:4 And his feet shall stand in that day upon the mount of Olives, which is before Jerusalem on the east, and the mount of Olives shall cleave in the midst thereof toward the east and toward the west, and there shall be a very great valley; and half of the mountain shall remove toward the north, and half of it toward the south.

Zec 14:5 And ye shall flee to the valley of the mountains; for the valley of the mountains shall reach unto Azal: yea, ye shall flee, like as ye fled from before the earthquake in the days of Uzziah king of Judah: and the LORD my God shall come, and all the saints with thee.

Zec 14:6 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the light shall not be clear, nor dark:

Zec 14:7 But it shall be one day which shall be known to the LORD, not day, nor night: but it shall come to pass, that at evening time it shall be light.

8. The testimony of Malachi.

Malichi 4:2-3

Mal 4:2 But unto you that fear my name shall the Sun of righteousness arise with healing in his wings; and ye shall go forth, and grow up as calves of the stall.

Mal 4:3 And ye shall tread down the wicked; for they shall be ashes under the soles of your feet in the day that I shall do this, saith the LORD of hosts.

9. The testimony of John.

1 John 2:28

1 John 2:28 And now, little children, abide in him; that, when he shall appear, we may have confidence, and not be ashamed before him at his coming.

1 John 3:2

1 John 3:2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.

Revelation 1:7

Rev 1:7 Behold, he cometh with clouds; and every eye shall see him, and they also which pierced him: and all kindreds of the earth shall wail because of him. Even so, Amen.

10. The testimony of James.

James 5:7-8

James 5:7 Be patient therefore, brethren, unto the coming of the Lord. Behold, the husbandman waiteth for the precious fruit of the earth, and hath long patience for it, until he receive the early and latter rain.

James 5:8 Be ye also patient; stablish your hearts: for the coming of the Lord draweth nigh.

11. The testimony of Peter.

Acts 3:19-20

Acts 3:19 Repent ye therefore, and be converted, that your sins may be blotted out, when the times of refreshing shall come from the presence of the Lord;

Acts 3:20 And he shall send Jesus Christ, which before was preached unto you:

1 Peter 1:13

1 Pet 1:13 Wherefore gird up the loins of your mind, be sober, and hope to the end for the grace that is to be brought unto you at the revelation of Jesus Christ;

1 Peter 5:4

1 Pet 5:4 And when the chief Shepherd shall appear, ye shall receive a crown of glory that fadeth not away.

12. The testimony of Paul.

1 Corinthians 15:23

1 Cor 15:23 But every man in his own order: Christ the firstfruits; afterward they that are Christ's at his coming.

1 Thessalonians 2:19

1 Th 2:19 For what is our hope, or joy, or crown of rejoicing? Are not even ye in the presence of our Lord Jesus Christ at his coming?

1 Thessalonians 3:13

1 Th 3:13 To the end he may stablish your hearts unblameable in holiness before God, even our Father, at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ with all his saints.

1 Thessalonians 4:16

1 Th 4:16 For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first:

13. The testimony of angels.

Acts 1:9-11

Acts 1:9 And when he had spoken these things, while they beheld, he was taken up; and a cloud received him out of their sight.

Acts 1:10 And while they looked stedfastly toward heaven as he went up, behold, two men stood by them in white apparel;

Acts 1:11 Which also said, Ye men of Galilee, why stand ye gazing up into heaven? this same Jesus, which is taken up from you into heaven, shall so come in like manner as ye have seen him go into heaven.

- a. The second coming is a glorious fact.

Psalm 17:15

Psa 17:15 As for me, I will behold thy face in righteousness: I shall be satisfied, when I awake, with thy likeness.

John 17:24

John 17:24 Father, I will that they also, whom thou hast given me, be with me where I am; that they may behold my glory, which thou hast given me: for thou lovedst me before the foundation of the world.

- b. The second coming is a solemn fact.

2 Corinthians 5:10

2 Cor 5:10 For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad.

- c. The second coming is an awful fact.

- 1) Awful to the careless.

1 Corinthians 3:11-15

1 Cor 3:11 For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ.

1 Cor 3:12 Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble;

1 Cor 3:13 Every man's work shall be made manifest: for the day shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire; and the fire shall try every man's work of what sort it is.

1 Cor 3:14 If any man's work abide which he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward.

1 Cor 3:15 If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire.

2) Awful to the lost.

Psalm 6:8

Psa 6:8 Depart from me, all ye workers of iniquity; for the LORD hath heard the voice of my weeping.

Luke 13:27

Luke 13:27 But he shall say, I tell you, I know you not whence ye are; depart from me, all ye workers of iniquity.

C. The purpose for the second coming of Christ.

1. To receive His own unto Himself.

John 14:3

John 14:3 And if I go and prepare a place for you, I will come again, and receive you unto myself; that where I am, there ye may be also.

John 17:24

John 17:24 Father, I will that they also, whom thou hast given me, be with me where I am; that they may behold my glory, which thou hast given me: for thou lovedst me before the foundation of the world.

Matthew 24:31

Mat 24:31 And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

2. To glorify His saints.

Philippians 3:20-21

Phil 3:20 For our conversation is in heaven; from whence also we look for the Saviour, the Lord Jesus Christ:

Phil 3:21 Who shall change our vile body, that it may be fashioned like unto his glorious body, according to the working whereby he is able even to subdue all things unto himself.

1 Corinthians 15:53

1 Cor 15:53 For this corruptible must put on incorruption, and this mortal must put on immortality.

3. To reward His followers.

1 Corinthians 3:8

1 Cor 3:8 Now he that planteth and he that watereth are one: and every man shall receive his own reward according to his own labour.

Colossians 2:18

Col 2:18 Let no man beguile you of your reward in a voluntary humility and worshipping of angels, intruding into those things which he hath not seen, vainly puffed up by his fleshly mind,

Revelation 22:12

Rev 22:12 And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be.

4. To judge the wicked (After the Millennium).

Revelation 20:11-15

Rev 20:11 And I saw a great white throne, and him that sat on it, from whose face the earth and the heaven fled away; and there was found no place for them.

Rev 20:12 And I saw the dead, small and great, stand before God; and the books were opened: and another book was opened, which is the book of life: and the dead were judged out of those things which were written in the books, according to their works.

Rev 20:13 And the sea gave up the dead which were in it; and death and hell delivered up the dead which were in them: and they were judged every man according to their works.

Rev 20:14 And death and hell were cast into the lake of fire. This is the second death.

Rev 20:15 And whosoever was not found written in the book of life was cast into the lake of fire.

5. To judge fallen angels.

Jude 1:6

Jude 1:6 And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day.

Revelation 20:10

Rev 20:10 And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.

6. To put down all rule, authority and power.

1 Corinthians 15:24

1 Cor 15:24 Then cometh the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power.

Revelation 19:11-16

Rev 19:11 And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war.

Rev 19:12 His eyes were as a flame of fire, and on his head were many crowns; and he had a name written, that no man knew, but he himself.

Rev 19:13 And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God.

Rev 19:14 And the armies which were in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean.

Rev 19:15 And out of his mouth goeth a sharp sword, that with it he should smite the nations: and he shall rule them with a rod of iron: and he treadeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God.

Rev 19:16 And he hath on his vesture and on his thigh a name written, KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS.

Revelation 11:15

Rev 11:15 And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.

7. To establish His Kingdom and rule over the earth.

Isaiah 2:2-4

Isa 2:2 And it shall come to pass in the last days, that the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it.

Isa 2:3 And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the mountain of the LORD, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the LORD from Jerusalem.

Isa 2:4 And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

Micah 4:1-5

Micah 4:1 But in the last days it shall come to pass, that the mountain of the house of the LORD shall be established in the top of the mountains, and it shall be exalted above the hills; and people shall flow unto it.

Micah 4:2 And many nations shall come, and say, Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the LORD, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for the law shall go forth of Zion, and the word of the LORD from Jerusalem.

Micah 4:3 And he shall judge among many people, and rebuke strong nations afar off; and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up a sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

Micah 4:4 But they shall sit every man under his vine and under his fig tree; and none shall make them afraid: for the mouth of the LORD of hosts hath spoken it.

Micah 4:5 For all people will walk every one in the name of his god, and we will walk in the name of the LORD our God for ever and ever.

D. The manner of the second coming.

1. The first phase will be into the air and visible only to the redeemed.

1 Thessalonians 4:13-18

1 Th 4:13 But I would not have you to be ignorant, brethren, concerning them which are asleep, that ye sorrow not, even as others which have no hope.

1 Th 4:14 For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him.

1 Th 4:15 For this we say unto you by the word of the Lord, that we which are alive and remain unto the coming of the Lord shall not prevent them which are asleep.

1 Th 4:16 For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first:

1 Th 4:17 Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.

1 Th 4:18 Wherefore comfort one another with these words.

a. Enoch is a type of the saint who will be “caught up” prior to the tribulation.

Hebrews 11:5

Heb 11:5 By faith Enoch was translated that he should not see death; and was not found, because God had translated him: for before his translation he had this testimony, that he pleased God.

1 Thessalonians 4:13-17

Read this passage from the Bible.

Revelation 3:10

Rev 3:10 Because thou hast kept the word of my patience, I also will keep thee from the hour of temptation, which shall come upon all the world, to try them that dwell upon the earth.

b. Noah, preserved through the deluge (flood) is a type of the Israelitish people who will be preserved through the great tribulation.

Jeremiah 30:5-10

Jer 30:5 For thus saith the LORD; We have heard a voice of trembling, of fear, and not of peace.

Jer 30:6 Ask ye now, and see whether a man doth travail with child? wherefore do I see every man with his hands on his loins, as a woman in travail, and all faces are turned into paleness?

Jer 30:7 Alas! for that day is great, so that none is like it: it is even the time of Jacob's trouble; but he shall be saved out of it.

Jer 30:8 For it shall come to pass in that day, saith the LORD of hosts, that I will break his yoke from off thy neck, and will burst thy bonds, and strangers shall no more serve themselves of him:

Jer 30:9 But they shall serve the LORD their God, and David their king, whom I will raise up unto them.

Jer 30:10 Therefore fear thou not, O my servant Jacob, saith the LORD; neither be dismayed, O Israel: for, lo, I will save thee from afar, and thy seed from the land of their captivity; and Jacob shall return, and shall be in rest, and be quiet, and none shall make him afraid.

2. The second phase of the second coming will be His coming to the earth where he will reveal Himself bodily and visibly to all.

Matthew 24:27-31

Mat 24:27 For as the lightning cometh out of the east, and shineth even unto the west; so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.

Mat 24:28 For wheresoever the carcase is, there will the eagles be gathered together.

Mat 24:29 Immediately after the tribulation of those days shall the sun be darkened, and the moon shall not give her light, and the stars shall fall from heaven, and the powers of the heavens shall be shaken:

Mat 24:30 And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

Mat 24:31 And he shall send his angels with a great sound of a trumpet, and they shall gather together his

elect from the four winds, from one end of heaven to the other.

Matthew 25:31

Mat 25:31 When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory:

Matthew 25:38-46

Mat 25:38 When saw we thee a stranger, and took thee in? or naked, and clothed thee?

Mat 25:39 Or when saw we thee sick, or in prison, and came unto thee?

Mat 25:40 And the King shall answer and say unto them, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye have done it unto one of the least of these my brethren, ye have done it unto me.

Mat 25:41 Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels:

Mat 25:42 For I was an hungered, and ye gave me no meat: I was thirsty, and ye gave me no drink:

Mat 25:43 I was a stranger, and ye took me not in: naked, and ye clothed me not: sick, and in prison, and ye visited me not.

Mat 25:44 Then shall they also answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we thee an hungered, or athirst, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not minister unto thee?

Mat 25:45 Then shall he answer them, saying, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye did it not to one of the least of these, ye did it not to me.

Mat 25:46 And these shall go away into everlasting punishment: but the righteous into life eternal.

3. The second coming will be sudden.

1 Thessalonians 5:3

1 Th 5:3 For when they shall say, Peace and safety; then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape.

Matthew 24:37

Mat 24:37 But as the days of Noe were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.

4. The second coming will be in great glory.

Matthew 24:30

Mat 24:30 And then shall appear the sign of the Son of man in heaven: and then shall all the tribes of the earth mourn, and they shall see the Son of man coming in the clouds of heaven with power and great glory.

5. The second coming will be with great power.

Mark 13:26

Mark 13:26 And then shall they see the Son of man coming in the clouds with great power and glory.

6. The second coming will be unexpected.

2 Peter 3:4

2 Pet 3:4 And saying, Where is the promise of his coming? for since the fathers fell asleep, all things continue as they were from the beginning of the creation.

1 Thessalonians 5:2-3

1 Th 5:2 For yourselves know perfectly that the day of the Lord so cometh as a thief in the night.

1 Th 5:3 For when they shall say, Peace and safety; then sudden destruction cometh upon them, as travail upon a woman with child; and they shall not escape.

Matthew 24:44

Mat 24:44 Therefore be ye also ready: for in such an hour as ye think not the Son of man cometh.

7. The second coming serves as a warning against false Christ's.

Matthew 24:5

Mat 24:5 For many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and shall deceive many.

Matthew 24:23-26

Mat 24:23 Then if any man shall say unto you, Lo, here is Christ, or there; believe it not.

Mat 24:24 For there shall arise false Christs, and false prophets, and shall show great signs and wonders; insomuch that, if it were possible, they shall deceive the very elect.

Mat 24:25 Behold, I have told you before.

Mat 24:26 Wherefore if they shall say unto you, Behold, he is in the desert; go not forth: behold, he is in the secret chambers; believe it not.

Luke 21:8

Luke 21:8 And he said, Take heed that ye be not deceived: for many shall come in my name, saying, I am Christ; and the time draweth near: go ye not therefore after them.

E. The signs of the second coming.

1. There will be dense ignorance among all classes of men concerning divine things.

Isaiah 60:1-3

Isa 60:1 Arise, shine; for thy light is come, and the glory of the LORD is risen upon thee.

Isa 60:2 For, behold, the darkness shall cover the earth, and gross darkness the people: but the LORD shall arise upon thee, and his glory shall be seen upon thee.

Isa 60:3 And the Gentiles shall come to thy light, and kings to the brightness of thy rising.

Daniel 12:10

Dan 12:10 Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried; but the wicked shall do wickedly: and none of the wicked shall understand; but the wise shall understand.

2 Thessalonians 2:10-12

2 Th 2:10 And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved.

2 Th 2:11 And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie:

2 Th 2:12 That they all might be damned who believed not the truth, but had pleasure in unrighteousness.

2. There will be a general disbelief in the second coming.

Matthew 24:37-38

Mat 24:37 But as the days of Noe were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.

Mat 24:38 For as in the days that were before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noe entered into the ark,

Luke 17:28-30

Luke 17:28 Likewise also as it was in the days of Lot; they did eat, they drank, they bought, they sold, they planted, they builded;

Luke 17:29 But the same day that Lot went out of Sodom it rained fire and brimstone from heaven, and destroyed them all.

Luke 17:30 Even thus shall it be in the day when the Son of man is revealed.

2 Peter 3:3-5

2 Pet 3:3 Knowing this first, that there shall come in the last days scoffers, walking after their own lusts,

2 Pet 3:4 And saying, Where is the promise of his coming? for since the fathers fell asleep, all things continue as they were from the beginning of the creation.

2 Pet 3:5 For this they willingly are ignorant of, that by the word of God the heavens were of old, and the earth standing out of the water and in the water:

3. There will be a tremendous departure from the faith.

Luke 18:8

Luke 18:8 I tell you that he will avenge them speedily. Nevertheless when the Son of man cometh, shall he find faith on the earth?

2 Thessalonians 2:3

2 Th 2:3 Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition;

1 Timothy 4:1-2

1 Tim 4:1 Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils;

1 Tim 4:2 Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron;

Acts 20:29-30

Acts 20:29 For I know this, that after my departing shall grievous wolves enter in among you, not sparing the flock.

Acts 20:30 Also of your own selves shall men arise, speaking perverse things, to draw away disciples after them.

4. There will be a manifest interest in the second coming among the Lord's true and faithful followers.

Daniel 12:4

Dan 12:4 But thou, O Daniel, shut up the words, and seal the book, even to the time

of the end: many shall run to and fro, and knowledge shall be increased.

Daniel 12::10

Dan 12:10 Many shall be purified, and made white, and tried; but the wicked shall do wickedly: and none of the wicked shall understand; but the wise shall understand.

5. There will be the ending of the church age at the second coming of Christ.

Revelation 3:22

Rev 3:22 He that hath an ear, let him hear what the Spirit saith unto the churches.

Revelation 3::22 ends the time of the church on earth. The church is not seen again until the tribulation has ended.

6. The second coming will usher in the end of the Gentile age.

Luke 21:24

Luke 21:24 And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled.

a. Gentile domination began with the carrying away of the kingdom of Judah into captivity by Nebuchadnezzar in 466 B. C.

b. The world-wide dispersion of the Jewish people began at the destruction of Jerusalem in 70 A. D

F. The time of the second coming.

Mark 13:32

Mark 13:32 But of that day and that hour knoweth no man, no, not the angels which are in heaven, neither the Son, but the Father.

G. The conditions of the world at the second coming.

1. Moral conditions will be like those of Noah's day as well as like the moral condition of Sodom and Gomorrah.

Matthew 24:37-39

Mat 24:37 But as the days of Noe were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.

Mat 24:38 For as in the days that were before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noe entered into the ark,

Mat 24:39 And knew not until the flood came, and took them all away; so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.

Luke 17:28-29

Luke 17:28 Likewise also as it was in the days of Lot; they did eat, they drank, they bought, they sold, they planted, they builded;

Luke 17:29 But the same day that Lot went out of Sodom it rained fire and brimstone from heaven, and destroyed them all.

Romans 1:24-32

Rom 1:24 Wherefore God also gave them up to uncleanness through the lusts of their own hearts, to dishonour their own bodies between themselves:

Rom 1:25 Who changed the truth of God into a lie, and worshipped and served the creature more than the Creator, who is blessed for ever. Amen.

Rom 1:26 For this cause God gave them up unto vile affections: for even their women did change the natural use into that which is against nature:

Rom 1:27 And likewise also the men, leaving the natural use of the woman, burned in their lust one toward another; men with men working that which is unseemly, and receiving in themselves that recompense of their error which was meet.

Rom 1:28 And even as they did not like to retain God in their knowledge, God gave them over to a reprobate mind, to do those things which are not convenient;

Rom 1:29 Being filled with all unrighteousness, fornication, wickedness, covetousness, maliciousness; full of envy, murder, debate, deceit, malignity; whisperers,

Rom 1:30 Backbiters, haters of God, despiteful, proud, boasters, inventors of evil things, disobedient to parents,

Rom 1:31 Without understanding, covenantbreakers, without natural affection, implacable, unmerciful:

Rom 1:32 Who knowing the judgment of God, that they which commit such things are worthy of death, not only do the same, but have pleasure in them that do them.

2. Lawlessness and lack of love will prevail.

Traditional love will be diminished:

Matthew 24:12

Mat 24:12 And because iniquity shall abound, the love of many shall wax cold.

a. The love of parents for children and children for parents..

b.. The love of husband for wife and wife for husband.

c. The love of citizens for their country.

d. The love of families for their homes.

3. Heresy will be prevalent.

1 Timothy 4:1-2

1 Tim 4:1 Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils;

1 Tim 4:2 Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron;
2 Timothy 3:13

2 Tim 3:13 But evil men and seducers shall wax worse and worse, deceiving, and being deceived.

2 Timothy 4:3-4

2 Tim 4:3 For the time will come when they will not endure sound doctrine; but after their own lusts shall they heap to themselves teachers, having itching ears;

2 Tim 4:4 And they shall turn away their ears from the truth, and shall be turned unto fables.

2 Thessalonians 2:3

2 Th 2:3 Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition;

4. Perilous times

2 Timothy 3:1

2 Tim 3:1 This know also, that in the last days perilous times shall come.

5. A falling away from the truth.

2 Thessalonians 2:3

2 Th 2:3 Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition;

H. The Premillennial view of the second coming.

1. Hatred and terrible persecution is to be borne by the saints until Christ returns.

Luke 12:32

Luke 12:32 Fear not, little flock; for it is your Father's good pleasure to give you the kingdom.

John 15:18-21

John 15:18 If the world hate you, ye know that it hated me before it hated you.

John 15:19 If ye were of the world, the world would love his own: but because ye are not of the world, but I have chosen you out of the world, therefore the world hateth you.

John 15:20 Remember the word that I said unto you, The servant is not greater than his lord. If they have persecuted me, they will also persecute you; if they have kept my saying, they will keep yours also.

John 15:21 But all these things will they do unto you for my name's sake, because they know not him that sent me.

John 16:33

John 16:33 These things I have spoken unto you, that in me ye might have peace. In the world ye shall have tribulation: but be of good cheer; I have overcome the world.

John 17:14

John 17:14 I have given them thy word; and the world hath hated them, because they are not of the world, even as I am not of the world.

Matthew 16:24

Mat 16:24 Then said Jesus unto his disciples, If any man will come after me, let him deny himself, and take up his cross, and follow me.

Matthew 16:21-22

Mat 16:21 From that time forth began Jesus to show unto his disciples, how that he must go unto Jerusalem, and suffer many things of the elders and chief priests and scribes, and be killed, and be raised again the third day.

Mat 16:22 Then Peter took him, and began to rebuke him, saying, Be it far from thee, Lord: this shall not be unto thee.

Acts 20:29-30

Acts 20:29 For I know this, that after my departing shall grievous wolves enter in among you, not sparing the flock.

Acts 20:30 Also of your own selves shall men arise, speaking perverse things, to draw away disciples after them.

1 Corinthians 15:19

1 Cor 15:19 If in this life only we have hope in Christ, we are of all men most miserable.

Philippians 1:29

Phil 1:29 For unto you it is given in the behalf of Christ, not only to believe on him, but also to suffer for his sake;

2. The world will become worse and worse until Christ comes.

Matthew 24:37-40

Mat 24:37 But as the days of Noe were, so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.

Mat 24:38 For as in the days that were before the flood they were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, until the day that Noe entered into the ark,

Mat 24:39 And knew not until the flood came, and took them all away; so shall also the coming of the Son of man be.

Mat 24:40 Then shall two be in the field; the one shall be taken, and the other left.

2 Peter 3:3-4

2 Pet 3:3 Knowing this first, that there shall come in the last days scoffers, walking after their own lusts,

2 Pet 3:4 And saying, Where is the promise of his coming? for since the fathers fell asleep, all things continue as they were from the beginning of the creation.

2 Timothy 1:3-5

2 Tim 1:3 I thank God, whom I serve from my forefathers with pure conscience, that without ceasing I have remembrance of thee in my prayers night and day;

2 Tim 1:4 Greatly desiring to see thee, being mindful of thy tears, that I may be filled with joy;

2 Tim 1:5 When I call to remembrance the unfeigned faith that is in thee, which dwelt first in thy grandmother Lois, and thy mother Eunice; and I am persuaded that in thee also.

2 Timothy 3:12-13

2 Tim 3:12 Yea, and all that will live godly in Christ Jesus shall suffer persecution.

2 Tim 3:13 But evil men and seducers shall wax worse and worse, deceiving, and being deceived.

Jude 1:12-15

Jude 1:12 These are spots in your feasts of charity, when they feast with you,

feeding themselves without fear: clouds they are without water, carried about of winds; trees whose fruit withereth, without fruit, twice dead, plucked up by the roots;

Jude 1:13 Raging waves of the sea, foaming out their own shame; wandering stars, to whom is reserved the blackness of darkness for ever.

Jude 1:14 And Enoch also, the seventh from Adam, prophesied of these, saying, Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousands of his saints,

Jude 1:15 To execute judgment upon all, and to convince all that are ungodly among them of all their ungodly deeds which they have ungodly committed, and of all their hard speeches which ungodly sinners have spoken against him.

Revelation 3:10-11

Rev 3:10 Because thou hast kept the word of my patience, I also will keep thee from the hour of temptation, which shall come upon all the world, to try them that dwell upon the earth.

Rev 3:11 Behold, I come quickly: hold that fast which thou hast, that no man take thy crown.

3. The second coming will bring with it wrath and judgment.

Jude 1:14

Jude 1:14 And Enoch also, the seventh from Adam, prophesied of these, saying, Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousands of his saints,

Matthew 25:31-46

Mat 25:31 When the Son of man shall come in his glory, and all the holy angels with him, then shall he sit upon the throne of his glory:

Mat 25:32 And before him shall be gathered all nations: and he shall separate them one from another, as a shepherd divideth his sheep from the goats:

Mat 25:33 And he shall set the sheep on his right hand, but the goats on the left.

Mat 25:34 Then shall the King say unto them on his right hand, Come, ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the foundation of the world:

Mat 25:35 For I was an hungered, and ye gave me meat: I was thirsty, and ye gave me drink: I was a stranger, and ye took me in:

Mat 25:36 Naked, and ye clothed me: I was sick, and ye visited me: I was in prison, and ye came unto me.

Mat 25:37 Then shall the righteous answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we thee an hungered, and fed thee? or thirsty, and gave thee drink?

Mat 25:38 When saw we thee a stranger, and took thee in? or naked, and clothed thee?

Mat 25:39 Or when saw we thee sick, or in prison, and came unto thee?

Mat 25:40 And the King shall answer and say unto them, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye have done it unto one of the least of these my brethren, ye have done it unto me.

Mat 25:41 Then shall he say also unto them on the left hand, Depart from me, ye cursed, into everlasting fire, prepared for the devil and his angels:

Mat 25:42 For I was an hungered, and ye gave me no meat: I was thirsty, and ye gave me no drink:

Mat 25:43 I was a stranger, and ye took me not in: naked, and ye clothed me not: sick, and in prison, and ye visited me not.

Mat 25:44 Then shall they also answer him, saying, Lord, when saw we thee an hungered, or athirst, or a stranger, or naked, or sick, or in prison, and did not minister unto thee?

Mat 25:45 Then shall he answer them, saying, Verily I say unto you, Inasmuch as ye did it not to one of the least of these, ye did it not to me.

Mat 25:46 And these shall go away into everlasting punishment: but the righteous into life eternal.

2 Thessalonians 1:7-9

2 Th 1:7 And to you who are troubled rest with us, when the Lord Jesus shall be revealed from heaven with his mighty angels,

2 Th 1:8 In flaming fire taking vengeance on them that know not God, and that obey not the gospel of our Lord Jesus Christ:

2 Th 1:9 Who shall be punished with everlasting destruction from the presence of the Lord, and from the glory of his power;

4. A remnant of Israel will be saved before the Millennium is ushered in.

Zechariah 12:10

Zec 12:10 And I will pour upon the house of David, and upon the inhabitants of Jerusalem, the spirit of grace and of supplications: and they shall look upon me whom they have pierced, and they shall mourn for him, as one mourneth for his only son, and shall be in bitterness for him, as one that is in bitterness for his firstborn.

5. The second coming will be after the great tribulation.

Isaiah 24:16-23

Isa 24:16 From the uttermost part of the earth have we heard songs, even glory to the righteous. But I said, My leanness, my leanness, woe unto me! the treacherous dealers have dealt treacherously; yea, the treacherous dealers have dealt very treacherously.

Isa 24:17 Fear, and the pit, and the snare, are upon thee, O inhabitant of the earth.

Isa 24:18 And it shall come to pass, that he who fleeth from the noise of the fear shall fall into the pit; and he that cometh up out of the midst of the pit shall be taken in the snare: for the windows from on high are open, and the foundations of the earth do shake.

Isa 24:19 The earth is utterly broken down, the earth is clean dissolved, the earth is moved exceedingly.

Isa 24:20 The earth shall reel to and fro like a drunkard, and shall be removed like a cottage; and the transgression thereof shall be heavy upon it; and it shall fall, and not rise again.

Isa 24:21 And it shall come to pass in that day, that the LORD shall punish the host of the high ones that are on high, and the kings of the earth upon the earth.

Isa 24:22 And they shall be gathered together, as prisoners are gathered in the pit,

and shall be shut up in the prison, and after many days shall they be visited.

Isa 24:23 Then the moon shall be confounded, and the sun ashamed, when the LORD of hosts shall reign in mount Zion, and in Jerusalem, and before his ancients gloriously.

Matthew 24:21

Mat 24:21 For then shall be great tribulation, such as was not since the beginning of the world to this time, no, nor ever shall be.

Luke 21:24

Luke 21:24 And they shall fall by the edge of the sword, and shall be led away captive into all nations: and Jerusalem shall be trodden down of the Gentiles, until the times of the Gentiles be fulfilled.

6. The seven-headed and ten-horned beast that carries upon his back the woman drunk with the blood of the saints will exist to persecute till Christ comes.

Revelation 13:1-10

Rev 13:1 And I stood upon the sand of the sea, and saw a beast rise up out of the sea, having seven heads and ten horns, and upon his horns ten crowns, and upon his heads the name of blasphemy.

Rev 13:2 And the beast which I saw was like unto a leopard, and his feet were as the feet of a bear, and his mouth as the mouth of a lion: and the dragon gave him his power, and his seat, and great authority.

Rev 13:3 And I saw one of his heads as it were wounded to death; and his deadly wound was healed: and all the world wondered after the beast.

Rev 13:4 And they worshipped the dragon which gave power unto the beast: and they worshipped the beast, saying, Who is like unto the beast? who is able to make war with him?

Rev 13:5 And there was given unto him a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies; and power was given unto him to continue forty and two months.

Rev 13:6 And he opened his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven.

Rev 13:7 And it was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them: and power was given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations.

Rev 13:8 And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book

of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.

Rev 13:9 If any man have an ear, let him hear.

Rev 13:10 He that leadeth into captivity shall go into captivity: he that killeth with the sword must be killed with the sword. Here is the patience and the faith of the saints.

Revelation chapters 17 and 18.

Read these passages from the Bible.

7. The tares will be separated from the wheat prior to the millennium being ushered in. This will be finalized at the judgment of the nations.

Matthew 13:24-30

Mat 13:24 Another parable put he forth unto them, saying, The kingdom of heaven is likened unto a man which sowed good seed in his field:

Mat 13:25 But while men slept, his enemy came and sowed tares among the wheat, and went his way.

Mat 13:26 But when the blade was sprung up, and brought forth fruit, then appeared the tares also.

Mat 13:27 So the servants of the householder came and said unto him, Sir, didst not thou sow good seed in thy field? from whence then hath it tares?

Mat 13:28 He said unto them, An enemy hath done this. The servants said unto him, Wilt thou then that we go and gather them up?

Mat 13:29 But he said, Nay; lest while ye gather up the tares, ye root up also the wheat with them.

Mat 13:30 Let both grow together until the harvest: and in the time of harvest I will say to the reapers, Gather ye together first the tares, and bind them in bundles to burn them: but gather the wheat into my barn.

Matthew 13:36-43

Mat 13:36 Then Jesus sent the multitude away, and went into the house: and his disciples came unto him, saying, Declare unto us the parable of the tares of the field.

Mat 13:37 He answered and said unto them, He that soweth the good seed is the Son of man;

Mat 13:38 The field is the world; the good seed are the children of the kingdom; but the tares are the children of the wicked one;

Mat 13:39 The enemy that sowed them is the devil; the harvest is the end of the world; and the reapers are the angels.

Mat 13:40 As therefore the tares are gathered and burned in the fire; so shall it be in the end of this world.

Mat 13:41 The Son of man shall send forth his angels, and they shall gather out of his kingdom all things that offend, and them which do iniquity;

Mat 13:42 And shall cast them into a furnace of fire: there shall be wailing and gnashing of teeth.

Mat 13:43 Then shall the righteous shine forth as the sun in the kingdom of their Father. Who hath ears to hear, let him hear.

8. The appearance of Antichrist will be prior to the Millennium and prior to Christ setting His feet down upon the earth in the second phase of His coming.

2 Thessalonians 2:1-11

2 Th 2:1 Now we beseech you, brethren, by the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ, and by our gathering together unto him,

2 Th 2:2 That ye be not soon shaken in mind, or be troubled, neither by spirit, nor by word, nor by letter as from us, as that the day of Christ is at hand.

2 Th 2:3 Let no man deceive you by any means: for that day shall not come, except there come a falling away first, and that man of sin be revealed, the son of perdition;

2 Th 2:4 Who opposeth and exalteth himself above all that is called God, or that is worshipped; so that he as God sitteth in the temple of God, showing himself that he is God.

2 Th 2:5 Remember ye not, that, when I was yet with you, I told you these things?

2 Th 2:6 And now ye know what withholdeth that he might be revealed in his time.

2 Th 2:7 For the mystery of iniquity doth already work: only he who now letteth will let, until he be taken out of the way.

2 Th 2:8 And then shall that Wicked be revealed, whom the Lord shall consume with the spirit of his mouth, and shall destroy with the brightness of his coming:

2 Th 2:9 Even him, whose coming is after the working of Satan with all power and signs and lying wonders,

2 Th 2:10 And with all deceivableness of unrighteousness in them that perish; because they received not the love of the truth, that they might be saved.

2 Th 2:11 And for this cause God shall send them strong delusion, that they should believe a lie:

Matthew 24:15

Mat 24:15 When ye therefore shall see the abomination of desolation, spoken of by Daniel the prophet, stand in the holy place, (whoso readeth, let him understand:)

9. The resurrection of the righteous dead will take place prior to the millennium.

1 Thessalonians 4:13-18

1 Th 4:13 But I would not have you to be ignorant, brethren, concerning them which are asleep, that ye sorrow not, even as others which have no hope.

1 Th 4:14 For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him.

1 Th 4:15 For this we say unto you by the word of the Lord, that we which are alive and remain unto the coming of the Lord shall not prevent them which are asleep.

1 Th 4:16 For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first:

1 Th 4:17 Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.

1 Th 4:18 Wherefore comfort one another with these words.

Revelation 20:4

Rev 20:4 And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them: and I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years.

10. Satan will be bound prior to the millennium.

Revelation 20:2-3

Rev 20:2 And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years,

Rev 20:3 And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive

the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season.

I. Events closely connected with the second coming.

1. The appearing of the Lord with His saints.

1 Thessalonians 3:13

1 Th 3:13 To the end he may stablish your hearts unblameable in holiness before God, even our Father, at the coming of our Lord Jesus Christ with all his saints.

Jude 1:14

Jude 1:14 And Enoch also, the seventh from Adam, prophesied of these, saying, Behold, the Lord cometh with ten thousands of his saints,

2. The resurrection of the sleeping saints and the changing of the living ones.

1 Thessalonians 4:13-18

1 Th 4:13 But I would not have you to be ignorant, brethren, concerning them which are asleep, that ye sorrow not, even as others which have no hope.

1 Th 4:14 For if we believe that Jesus died and rose again, even so them also which sleep in Jesus will God bring with him.

1 Th 4:15 For this we say unto you by the word of the Lord, that we which are alive and remain unto the coming of the Lord shall not prevent them which are asleep.

1 Th 4:16 For the Lord himself shall descend from heaven with a shout, with the voice of the archangel, and with the trump of God: and the dead in Christ shall rise first:

1 Th 4:17 Then we which are alive and remain shall be caught up together with them in the clouds, to meet the Lord in the air: and so shall we ever be with the Lord.

1 Th 4:18 Wherefore comfort one another with these words.

1 Corinthians 15:16-19

1 Cor 15:16 For if the dead rise not, then is not Christ raised:

1 Cor 15:17 And if Christ be not raised, your faith is vain; ye are yet in your sins.

1 Cor 15:18 Then they also which are fallen asleep in Christ are perished.

1 Cor 15:19 If in this life only we have hope in Christ, we are of all men most miserable.

John 12:26

John 12:26 If any man serve me, let him follow me; and where I am, there shall also my servant be: if any man serve me, him will my Father honour.

3. The rewarding of the saints.

2 Corinthians 5:10

2 Cor 5:10 For we must all appear before the judgment seat of Christ; that every one may receive the things done in his body, according to that he hath done, whether it be good or bad.

1 Corinthians 3:11-15

1 Cor 3:11 For other foundation can no man lay than that is laid, which is Jesus Christ.

1 Cor 3:12 Now if any man build upon this foundation gold, silver, precious stones, wood, hay, stubble;

1 Cor 3:13 Every man's work shall be made manifest: for the day shall declare it, because it shall be revealed by fire; and the fire shall try every man's work of what sort it is.

1 Cor 3:14 If any man's work abide which he hath built thereupon, he shall receive a reward.

1 Cor 3:15 If any man's work shall be burned, he shall suffer loss: but he himself shall be saved; yet so as by fire.

Revelation 22:12

Rev 22:12 And, behold, I come quickly; and my reward is with me, to give every man according as his work shall be.

4. The marriage of the Lamb and His bride.

2 Corinthians 11:2

2 Cor 11:2 For I am jealous over you with godly jealousy: for I have espoused you to one husband, that I may present you as a chaste virgin to Christ.

Revelation 19:7-10

Rev 19:7 Let us be glad and rejoice, and give honour to him: for the marriage of the Lamb is come, and his wife hath made herself ready.

Rev 19:8 And to her was granted that she should be arrayed in fine linen, clean and white: for the fine linen is the righteousness of saints.

Rev 19:9 And he saith unto me, Write, Blessed are they which are called unto the marriage supper of the Lamb. And he saith unto me, These are the true sayings of God.

Rev 19:10 And I fell at his feet to worship him. And he said unto me, See thou do it not: I am thy fellowservant, and of thy brethren that have the testimony of Jesus: worship God: for the testimony of Jesus is the spirit of prophecy.

5. The rise of the beasts.
 - a. The Antichrist out of the sea.

Revelation 13:1-10

Rev 13:1 And I stood upon the sand of the sea, and saw a beast rise up out of the sea, having seven heads and ten horns, and upon his horns ten crowns, and upon his heads the name of blasphemy.

Rev 13:2 And the beast which I saw was like unto a leopard, and his feet were as the feet of a bear, and his mouth as the mouth of a lion: and the dragon gave him his power, and his seat, and great authority.

Rev 13:3 And I saw one of his heads as it were wounded to death; and his deadly wound was healed: and all the world wondered after the beast.

Rev 13:4 And they worshipped the dragon which gave power unto the beast: and they worshipped the beast, saying, Who is like unto the beast? who is able to make war with him?

Rev 13:5 And there was given unto him a mouth speaking great things and blasphemies; and power was given unto him to continue forty and two months.

Rev 13:6 And he opened his mouth in blasphemy against God, to blaspheme his name, and his tabernacle, and them that dwell in heaven.

Rev 13:7 And it was given unto him to make war with the saints, and to overcome them: and power was given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations.

Rev 13:8 And all that dwell upon the earth shall worship him, whose names are not written in the book of life of the Lamb slain from the foundation of the world.

Rev 13:9 If any man have an ear, let him hear.

Rev 13:10 He that leadeth into captivity shall go into captivity: he that killeth with the sword

must be killed with the sword. Here is the patience and the faith of the saints.

Daniel chapter 7

Read this passage from the Bible.

b. The false prophet out of the earth.

Revelation 13:11-18

Rev 13:11 And I beheld another beast coming up out of the earth; and he had two horns like a lamb, and he spake as a dragon.

Rev 13:12 And he exerciseth all the power of the first beast before him, and causeth them that dwell on the earth and them which dwell therein to worship the first beast, whose deadly wound was healed.

Rev 13:13 And he doeth great wonders, so that he maketh fire come down from heaven on the earth in the sight of men,

Rev 13:14 And deceiveth them that dwell on the earth by the means of those miracles which he had power to do in the sight of the beast; saying to them that dwell on the earth, that they should make an image to the beast, which had the wound by a sword, and did live.

Rev 13:15 And he had power to give life unto the image of the beast, that the image of the beast should both speak, and cause that as many as would not worship the image of the beast should be killed.

Rev 13:16 And he causeth all, both small and great, rich and poor, free and bond, to receive a mark in their right hand, or in their foreheads:

Rev 13:17 And that no man might buy or sell, save he that had the mark, or the name of the beast, or the number of his name.

Rev 13:18 Here is wisdom. Let him that hath understanding count the number of the beast: for it is the number of a man; and his number is Six hundred threescore and six.

6. The great tribulation.

Revelation chapters 11 through 18.

Read these passages from the Bible.

Jeremiah 30:7

Jer 30:7 Alas! for that day is great, so that none is like it: it is even the time of Jacob's trouble; but he shall be saved out of it.

Psalms 2:5

Psa 2:5 Then shall he speak unto them in his wrath, and vex them in his sore displeasure.

Isaiah 26:20-21

Isa 26:20 Come, my people, enter thou into thy chambers, and shut thy doors about thee: hide thyself as it were for a little moment, until the indignation be overpast.

Isa 26:21 For, behold, the LORD cometh out of his place to punish the inhabitants of the earth for their iniquity: the earth also shall disclose her blood, and shall no more cover her slain.

Zechariah 13:8-9

Zec 13:8 And it shall come to pass, that in all the land, saith the LORD, two parts therein shall be cut off and die; but the third shall be left therein.

Zec 13:9 And I will bring the third part through the fire, and will refine them as silver is refined, and will try them as gold is tried: they shall call on my name, and I will hear them: I will say, It is my people: and they shall say, The LORD is my God.

Zechariah 14:1

Zec 14:1 Behold, the day of the LORD cometh, and thy spoil shall be divided in the midst of thee.

Matthew 23:37-39

Mat 23:37 O Jerusalem, Jerusalem, thou that killest the prophets, and stonest them which are sent unto thee, how often would I have gathered thy children together, even as a hen gathereth her chickens under her wings, and ye would not!

Mat 23:38 Behold, your house is left unto you desolate.

Mat 23:39 For I say unto you, Ye shall not see me henceforth, till ye shall say, Blessed is he that cometh in the name of the Lord.

Revelation 16:17-21

Rev 16:17 And the seventh angel poured out his vial into the air; and there came a great voice out of the temple of heaven, from the throne, saying, It is done.

Rev 16:18 And there were voices, and thunders, and lightnings; and there was a great earthquake, such as was not since men were upon the earth, so mighty an earthquake, and so great.

Rev 16:19 And the great city was divided into three parts, and the cities of the nations fell: and great came in remembrance before God, to give unto her the cup of the wine of the fierceness of his wrath.

Rev 16:20 And every island fled away, and the mountains were not found.

Rev 16:21 And there fell upon men a great hail out of heaven, every stone about the weight of a talent: and men blasphemed God because of the plague of the hail; for the plague thereof was exceeding great.

7. The battle of Armageddon.

Ezekiel 39:1-6

Ezek 39:1 Therefore, thou son of man, prophesy against Gog, and say, Thus saith the Lord GOD; Behold, I am against thee, O Gog, the chief prince of Meshech and Tubal:

Ezek 39:2 And I will turn thee back, and leave but the sixth part of thee, and will cause thee to come up from the north parts, and will bring thee upon the mountains of :

Ezek 39:3 And I will smite thy bow out of thy left hand, and will cause thine arrows to fall out of thy right hand.

Ezek 39:4 Thou shalt fall upon the mountains of , thou, and all thy bands, and the people that is with thee: I will give thee unto the ravenous birds of every sort, and to the beasts of the field to be devoured.

Ezek 39:5 Thou shalt fall upon the open field: for I have spoken it, saith the Lord GOD.

Ezek 39:6 And I will send a fire on Magog, and among them that dwell carelessly in the isles: and they shall know that I am the LORD.

Revelation 19:17-21

Rev 19:17 And I saw an angel standing in the sun; and he cried with a loud voice, saying to all the fowls that fly in the midst of heaven, Come and gather yourselves together unto the supper of the great God;

Rev 19:18 That ye may eat the flesh of kings, and the flesh of captains, and the flesh of mighty men, and the flesh of horses, and of them that sit on them, and the flesh of all men, both free and bond, both small and great.

Rev 19:19 And I saw the beast, and the kings of the earth, and their armies, gathered together to make war against him that sat on the horse, and against his army.

Rev 19:20 And the beast was taken, and with him the false prophet that wrought miracles before him, with

which he deceived them that had received the mark of the beast, and them that worshipped his image. These both were cast alive into a lake of fire burning with brimstone.

Rev 19:21 And the remnant were slain with the sword of him that sat upon the horse, which sword proceeded out of his mouth: and all the fowls were filled with their flesh.

Isaiah 2:10-12

Isa 2:10 Enter into the rock, and hide thee in the dust, for fear of the LORD, and for the glory of his majesty.

Isa 2:11 The lofty looks of man shall be humbled, and the haughtiness of men shall be bowed down, and the LORD alone shall be exalted in that day.

Isa 2:12 For the day of the LORD of hosts shall be upon every one that is proud and lofty, and upon every one that is lifted up; and he shall be brought low:

Isaiah 63:1-6

Isa 63:1 Who is this that cometh from , with dyed garments from Bozrah? this that is glorious in his apparel, travelling in the greatness of his strength? I that speak in righteousness, mighty to save.

Isa 63:2 Wherefore art thou red in thine apparel, and thy garments like him that treadeth in the winefat?

Isa 63:3 I have trodden the winepress alone; and of the people there was none with me: for I will tread them in mine anger, and trample them in my fury; and their blood shall be sprinkled upon my garments, and I will stain all my raiment.

Isa 63:4 For the day of vengeance is in mine heart, and the year of my redeemed is come.

Isa 63:5 And I looked, and there was none to help; and I wondered that there was none to uphold: therefore mine own arm brought salvation unto me; and my fury, it upheld me.

Isa 63:6 And I will tread down the people in mine anger, and make them drunk in my fury, and I will bring down their strength to the earth.

8. The conversion of the remnant and the restoration of
under God.

Romans 11:26

Rom 11:26 And so all shall be saved: as it is written, There shall come out of Sion the Deliverer, and shall turn away ungodliness from Jacob:

9. The binding of Satan.

Revelation 20:1-3

Rev 20:1 And I saw an angel come down from heaven, having the key of the bottomless pit and a great chain in his hand.

Rev 20:2 And he laid hold on the dragon, that old serpent, which is the Devil, and Satan, and bound him a thousand years,

Rev 20:3 And cast him into the bottomless pit, and shut him up, and set a seal upon him, that he should deceive the nations no more, till the thousand years should be fulfilled: and after that he must be loosed a little season.

10. The coronation of Christ as King.

Isaiah 32:1

Isa 32:1 Behold, a king shall reign in righteousness, and princes shall rule in judgment.

Revelation 19:11-16

Rev 19:11 And I saw heaven opened, and behold a white horse; and he that sat upon him was called Faithful and True, and in righteousness he doth judge and make war.

Rev 19:12 His eyes were as a flame of fire, and on his head were many crowns; and he had a name written, that no man knew, but he himself.

Rev 19:13 And he was clothed with a vesture dipped in blood: and his name is called The Word of God.

Rev 19:14 And the armies which were in heaven followed him upon white horses, clothed in fine linen, white and clean.

Rev 19:15 And out of his mouth goeth a sharp sword, that with it he should smite the nations: and he shall rule them with a rod of iron: and he treadeth the winepress of the fierceness and wrath of Almighty God.

Rev 19:16 And he hath on his vesture and on his thigh a name written, KING OF KINGS, AND LORD OF LORDS.

Isaiah 32:17-18

Isa 32:17 And the work of righteousness shall be peace; and the effect of righteousness quietness and assurance for ever.

Isa 32:18 And my people shall dwell in a peaceable habitation, and in sure dwellings, and in quiet resting places;

Daniel 7:13-14

Dan 7:13 I saw in the night visions, and, behold, one like the Son of man came with the clouds of heaven, and came to the Ancient of days, and they brought him near before him.

Dan 7:14 And there was given him dominion, and glory, and a kingdom, that all people, nations, and languages, should serve him: his dominion is an everlasting dominion, which shall not pass away, and his kingdom that which shall not be destroyed.

Psalms 72:1-2

Psa 72:1 A Psalm for Solomon. Give the king thy judgments, O God, and thy righteousness unto the king's son.

Psa 72:2 He shall judge thy people with righteousness, and thy poor with judgment.

Psalm 72:8-9

Psa 72:8 He shall have dominion also from sea to sea, and from the river unto the ends of the earth.

Psa 72:9 They that dwell in the wilderness shall bow before him; and his enemies shall lick the dust.

Revelation 11:15-18

Rev 11:15 And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.

Rev 11:16 And the four and twenty elders, which sat before God on their seats, fell upon their faces, and worshipped God,

Rev 11:17 Saying, We give thee thanks, O Lord God Almighty, which art, and wast, and art to come; because thou hast taken to thee thy great power, and hast reigned.

Rev 11:18 And the nations were angry, and thy wrath is come, and the time of the dead, that they should be judged, and that thou shouldest give reward unto thy servants the prophets, and to the saints, and them that fear thy name, small and great; and shouldest destroy them which destroy the earth.

11. The millennium.

Revelation 11:15

Rev 11:15 And the seventh angel sounded; and there were great voices in heaven, saying, The kingdoms of this world are become the kingdoms of our Lord, and of his Christ; and he shall reign for ever and ever.

Revelation 20:4

Rev 20:4 And I saw thrones, and they sat upon them, and judgment was given unto them: and I saw the souls of them that were beheaded for the witness of Jesus, and for the word of God, and which had not worshipped the beast, neither his image, neither had received his mark upon their foreheads, or in their hands; and they lived and reigned with Christ a thousand years.

a. Tribulation saints will be the foundation of the nations.

Isaiah 65:20-21

Isa 65:20 There shall be no more thence an infant of days, nor an old man that hath not filled his days: for the child shall die an hundred years old; but the sinner being an hundred years old shall be accursed.

Isa 65:21 And they shall build houses, and inhabit them; and they shall plant vineyards, and eat the fruit of them.

b. Characteristics of the millennium as given in Psalm 72.

1) There will be universal righteousness.

Psalm 72:2-4

Psa 72:2 He shall judge thy people with righteousness, and thy poor with judgment.

Psa 72:3 The mountains shall bring peace to the people, and the little hills, by righteousness.

Psa 72:4 He shall judge the poor of the people, he shall save the children of the needy, and shall break in pieces the oppressor.

Isaiah 32:1

Isa 32:1 Behold, a king shall reign in righteousness, and princes shall rule in judgment.

- 2) There will be universal revival.

Psalm 72:6

Psa 72:6 He shall come down like rain upon the mown grass: as showers that water the earth.

- 3) There will be universal prosperity.

Psalm 72:7

Psa 72:7 In his days shall the righteous flourish; and abundance of peace so long as the moon endureth.

- 4) There will be universal dominion.

Psalm 72:8

Psa 72:8 He shall have dominion also from sea to sea, and from the river unto the ends of the earth.

- 5) There will be universal subjection.

Psalm 72:9-11

Psa 72:9 They that dwell in the wilderness shall bow before him; and his enemies shall lick the dust.

Psa 72:10 The kings of Tarshish and of the isles shall bring presents: the kings of and Seba shall offer gifts.

Psa 72:11 Yea, all kings shall fall down before him: all nations shall serve him.

- 6) There will be universal blessing.

Psalm 72:16-17

Psa 72:16 There shall be an handful of corn in the earth upon the top of the mountains; the fruit thereof shall shake like : and they of the city shall flourish like grass of the earth.

Psa 72:17 His name shall endure for ever: his name shall be continued as long as the sun: and men shall be blessed in him: all nations shall call him blessed.

7) There will be universal glory.

Psalm 72:19

Psa 72:19 And blessed be his glorious name for ever: and let the whole earth be filled with his glory; Amen, and Amen.

Micah 4:1-8

Micah 4:1 But in the last days it shall come to pass, that the mountain of the house of the LORD shall be established in the top of the mountains, and it shall be exalted above the hills; and people shall flow unto it.

Micah 4:2 And many nations shall come, and say, Come, and let us go up to the mountain of the LORD, and to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for the law shall go forth of Zion, and the word of the LORD from Jerusalem.

Micah 4:3 And he shall judge among many people, and rebuke strong nations afar off; and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up a

sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

Micah 4:4 But they shall sit every man under his vine and under his fig tree; and none shall make them afraid: for the mouth of the LORD of hosts hath spoken it.

Micah 4:5 For all people will walk every one in the name of his god, and we will walk in the name of the LORD our God for ever and ever.

Micah 4:6 In that day, saith the LORD, will I assemble her that halteth, and I will gather her that is driven out, and her that I have afflicted;

Micah 4:7 And I will make her that halted a remnant, and her that was cast far off a strong nation: and the LORD shall reign over them in from henceforth, even for ever.

Micah 4:8 And thou, O tower of the flock, the strong hold of the daughter of , unto thee shall it come, even the first dominion; the kingdom shall come to the daughter of .Zion

Isaiah 2:1-5

Isa 2:1 The word that Isaiah the son of Amoz saw concerning and .Judah

Isa 2:2 And it shall come to pass in the last days, that the mountain of the Lord's house shall be established in the top of the mountains, and shall be exalted above the hills; and all nations shall flow unto it.

Isa 2:3 And many people shall go and say, Come ye, and let us go up to the

mountain of the LORD, to the house of the God of Jacob; and he will teach us of his ways, and we will walk in his paths: for out of Zion shall go forth the law, and the word of the LORD from Jerusalem.

Isa 2:4 And he shall judge among the nations, and shall rebuke many people: and they shall beat their swords into plowshares, and their spears into pruninghooks: nation shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war any more.

Isa 2:5 O house of Jacob, come ye, and let us walk in the light of the LORD.

Isaiah chapter 11

Read this chapter from the Bible.

12. The loosing of Satan for a season.

Revelation 20:7

Rev 20:7 And when the thousand years are expired, Satan shall be loosed out of his prison,

13. The battle of God and Magog.

Revelation 20:8

Rev 20:8 And shall go out to deceive the nations which are in the four quarters of the earth, Gog and Magog, to gather them together to battle: the number of whom is as the sand of the sea.

14. The destruction of the Satanic armies.

Revelation 20:9

Rev 20:9 And they went up on the breadth of the earth, and compassed the camp of the saints about, and the beloved city: and fire came down from God out of heaven, and devoured them.

15. The casting of Satan into Gehenna.

Revelation 20:10

Rev 20:10 And the devil that deceived them was cast into the lake of fire and brimstone, where the beast and the false prophet are, and shall be tormented day and night for ever and ever.

16. The purging of the earth and heaven.

Isaiah 65:17

Isa 65:17 For, behold, I create new heavens and a new earth: and the former shall not be remembered, nor come into mind.

2 Peter 3:10-14

2 Pet 3:10 But the day of the Lord will come as a thief in the night; in the which the heavens shall pass away with a great noise, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat, the earth also and the works that are therein shall be burned up.

2 Pet 3:11 Seeing then that all these things shall be dissolved, what manner of persons ought ye to be in all holy conversation and godliness,

2 Pet 3:12 Looking for and hasting unto the coming of the day of God, wherein the heavens being on fire shall be dissolved, and the elements shall melt with fervent heat?

2 Pet 3:13 Nevertheless we, according to his promise, look for new heavens and a new earth, wherein dwelleth righteousness.

2 Pet 3:14 Wherefore, beloved, seeing that ye look for such things, be diligent that ye may be found of him in peace, without spot, and blameless.

Revelation 21:1

Rev 21:1 And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea.

Hebrews 1:1-12

Heb 1:1 God, who at sundry times and in divers manners spake in time past unto the fathers by the prophets,

Heb 1:2 Hath in these last days spoken unto us by his Son, whom he hath appointed heir of all things, by whom also he made the worlds;

Heb 1:3 Who being the brightness of his glory, and the express image of his person, and upholding all things by the word of his power, when he had by himself purged our sins, sat down on the right hand of the Majesty on high;

Heb 1:4 Being made so much better than the angels, as he hath by inheritance obtained a more excellent name than they.

Heb 1:5 For unto which of the angels said he at any time, Thou art my Son, this day have I begotten thee? And again, I will be to him a Father, and he shall be to me a Son?

Heb 1:6 And again, when he bringeth in the firstbegotten into the world, he saith, And let all the angels of God worship him.

Heb 1:7 And of the angels he saith, Who maketh his angels spirits, and his ministers a flame of fire.

Heb 1:8 But unto the Son he saith, Thy throne, O God, is for ever and ever: a sceptre of righteousness is the sceptre of thy kingdom.

Heb 1:9 Thou hast loved righteousness, and hated iniquity; therefore God, even thy God, hath anointed thee with the oil of gladness above thy fellows.

Heb 1:10 And, Thou, Lord, in the beginning hast laid the foundation of the earth; and the heavens are the works of thine hands:

Heb 1:11 They shall perish; but thou remainest; and they all shall wax old as doth a garment;

Heb 1:12 And as a vesture shalt thou fold them up, and they shall be changed: but thou art the same, and thy years shall not fail.

III. The grand consummation.

1 Corinthians 15:24

1 Cor 15:24 Then cometh the end, when he shall have delivered up the kingdom to God, even the Father; when he shall have put down all rule and all authority and power.

Revelation 21:4-5

Rev 21:4 And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.

Rev 21:5 And he that sat upon the throne said, Behold, I make all things new. And he said unto me, Write: for these words are true and faithful.

Revelation chapters 21 and 22.

Read these passages from the Bible.

A. There will be a new heaven and earth.

Revelation 21:1

Rev 21:1 And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea.

B. There will be a new Jerusalem.

Revelation 21:2

Rev 21:2 And I John saw the holy city, new Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband.

C. There will be a new people.

1 John 3:1-2

1 John 3:1 Behold, what manner of love the Father hath bestowed upon us, that we should be called the sons of God: therefore the world knoweth us not, because it knew him not.

1 John 3:2 Beloved, now are we the sons of God, and it doth not yet appear what we shall be: but we know that, when he shall appear, we shall be like him; for we shall see him as he is.

D. There will be a new temple.

Revelation 21:22

Rev 21:22 And I saw no temple therein: for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it.

E. There will be a new paradise.

1. Heaven is described as a garden.

Revelation 22:1-5

(Rev 22:1) And he showed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb.

(Rev 22:2) In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month: and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations.

(Rev 22:3) And there shall be no more curse: but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it; and his servants shall serve him:

(Rev 22:4) And they shall see his face; and his name shall be in their foreheads.

(Rev 22:5) And there shall be no night there; and they need no candle, neither light of the sun; for the Lord God giveth them light: and they shall reign for ever and ever.

a. There are five things which are essential to human happiness.

- 1) Water.
- 2) Food.
- 3) Health.
- 4) Fellowship.
- 5) Productivity.

2. All five things are present in heaven as seen in the . of

a. For water there is "a pure river of the water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God and of the Lamb."

b. For food there is "the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month."

c. For health there is "the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations."

d. For fellowship there is "the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it...and they shall see His face."

e. For productivity there are his servants who shall serve him.

3. Human history began in a garden, The Garden of Eden.

(In that garden was a tree of life, a great river, happy and willing service to God, fellowship with God and the absence of any curse caused by sin)

4. Human history will end in a garden.

(In the there will be the tree of life, the river of the water of life, happy and willing service to God, fellowship with God and the absence of any curse caused by sin) o f

5. The Garden of God will surpass the glory of the first garden as the new earth will surpass the old.

